Thank you for purchasing this JVC product. Before operating the device, please read the instructions carefully to ensure the best possible performance.

For Customer Use:
Enter below the Serial No. which is located on the body. Retain this information for future reference.
Model No.
Serial No.
Important Safeguards

1. Read all of these instructions.
2. Keep these instructions.
3. Heed all warnings.
4. Follow all instructions.
5. Do not use this apparatus near water.
6. Clean only with dry cloth.
7. Do not block any ventilation openings. Install in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
8. Do not install near any heat sources such as radiators, heat registers, stoves, or other apparatus (including amplifiers) that produce heat.
9. Do not defeat the safety purpose of the polarized or grounding-type plug. A polarized plug has two blades with one wider than the other. A grounding type plug has two blades and a third grounding prong. The wide blade or the third prong is provided for your safety. If the provided plug does not fit into your outlet, consult an electrician for replacement of the obsolete outlet.
10. Protect the power cord from being walked on or pinched particularly at plug, convenience receptacles, and the point where they exit from the apparatus.
11. Only use attachments/accessories specified by the manufacturer.
12. Use only with the cart, stand, tripod, bracket, or table specified by the manufacturer, or sold with the apparatus. When a cart is used, use caution when moving the cart/apparatus combination to avoid injury from tip-over.
13. Unplug this apparatus during lightning storms or when unused for long periods of time.
14. Refer all servicing to qualified service personnel. Servicing is required when the apparatus has been damaged in any way, such as power-supply cord or plug is damaged, liquid has been spilled or objects have fallen into the apparatus, the apparatus has been exposed to rain or moisture, does not operate normally, or has been dropped.

Safety Precautions

FOR USA AND CANADA

CAUTION: TO REDUCE THE RISK OF ELECTRIC SHOCK, DO NOT REMOVE COVER (OR BACK). NO USER SERVICEABLE PARTS INSIDE. REFER SERVICING TO QUALIFIED SERVICE PERSONNEL.

INFORMATION:
This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:
- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

CAUTION:
CHANGES OR MODIFICATIONS NOT APPROVED BY JVC COULD VOID USER’S AUTHORITY TO OPERATE THE EQUIPMENT.

INFORMATION FOR USA

This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

RENSEIGNEMENT (POUR CANADA)
Cet appareil numérique de la Classe B est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

WARNING:
TO REDUCE THE RISK OF FIRE OR ELECTRIC SHOCK, DO NOT EXPOSE THIS APPLIANCE TO RAIN OR MOISTURE.
This unit should be used with 12V DC only.

CAUTION:
To prevent electric shock, do not open the cabinet. No user serviceable parts inside. Refer servicing to qualified service personnel.

AVERTISSEMENT :
POUR ÉVITER LES RISQUES D'INCENDIE OU D'ÉLECTROCUTION, NE PAS EXPOSER L'APPAREIL À L'HUMIDITÉ OU À LA PLUIE.
Ce magnétoscope ne doit être utilisé que sur du courant direct en 12V.

ATTENTION :
Afin d'éviter tout risque d'incendie ou d'électrocution, ne pas utiliser d'autres sources d'alimentation électrique.

REMARQUE:
La plaque signalétique (plaque du numéro desérie) est située sur le cadre inférieur de l'unité.

Due to design modifications, data given in this instruction book are subject to possible change without prior notice.

The apparatus shall not be exposed to dripping or splashing and that no objects filled with liquids, such as vases, shall be placed close to the apparatus.

Worded: “CAUTION - Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.”
FOR EUROPE

This equipment is in conformity with the provisions and protection requirements of the corresponding European Directives. This equipment is designed for professional video appliances and can be used in the following environments:
- residential area (in houses)
- commercial and light industry; e.g. offices or theatres
- urban outdoors

In order to keep the best performance and furthermore for electromagnetic compatibility we recommend to use cables not exceeding the following length:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Port</th>
<th>Cable</th>
<th>Length</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DC IN</td>
<td>Exclusive Cable</td>
<td>2 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIDEO</td>
<td>Coaxial Cable</td>
<td>3 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P4, P6</td>
<td>Coaxial Cable</td>
<td>3 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUDIO INPUT1,</td>
<td>Shielded Cable</td>
<td>3 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INPUT2</td>
<td>AUDIO OUT CH1,</td>
<td>3 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CH2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phones1, 2</td>
<td>Exclusive Cable</td>
<td>2 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEEE1394 (HDV/DV)</td>
<td>Exclusive Cable</td>
<td>4.5 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REMOTE</td>
<td>Exclusive Cable</td>
<td>3 m</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**WARNING:**
TO REDUCE THE RISK OF FIRE OR ELECTRIC SHOCK, DO NOT EXPOSE THIS APPLIANCE TO RAIN OR MOISTURE. This unit should be used with 12V DC only.

**CAUTION:** To prevent electric shocks and fire hazards, do NOT use any other power source.

**NOTE:**
The rating plate (serial number plate) is on the bottom of the unit.

**CAUTION:**
To prevent electric shock, do not open the cabinet. No user-serviceable parts inside. Refer servicing to qualified service personnel.

Due to design modifications, data given in this instruction book are subject to possible change without prior notice.

The apparatus shall not be exposed to dripping or splashing and that no objects filled with liquids, such as vases, shall be placed close to the apparatus.

**WARNING:** Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.

**Information for Users on Disposal of Old Equipment**

**Attention:** This symbol is only valid in the European Union.

**[European Union]**
This symbol indicates that the electrical and electronic equipment should not be disposed of as general household waste at its end-of-life. Instead, the product should be handed over to the applicable collection point for the recycling of electrical and electronic equipment for proper treatment, recovery and recycling in accordance with your national legislation.

By disposing of this product correctly, you help to conserve natural resources and will help prevent potential negative effects on the environment and human health which could otherwise be caused by inappropriate waste handling of this product. For more information about collection point and recycling of this product, please contact your local municipal office, your household waste disposal service or the shop where you purchased the product. Penalties may be applicable for incorrect disposal of this waste, in accordance with national legislation.

**[Business users]**
If you wish to dispose of this product, please visit our web page www.jvc-europe.com to obtain information about the take-back of the product.

**[Other Countries outside the European Union]**
If you wish to dispose of this product, please do so in accordance with applicable national legislation or other rules in your country for the treatment of old electrical and electronic equipment.

---

Dear Customer,

This apparatus is in conformance with the valid European directives and standards regarding electromagnetic compatibility and electrical safety.

European representative of Victor Company of Japan Limited is:
JVC Technology Centre Europe GmbH
P.O. Box 10 05 52
65145 Friedberg
Germany

---

**WARNING:**
TO REDUCE THE RISK OF FIRE OR ELECTRIC SHOCK, DO NOT EXPOSE THIS APPLIANCE TO RAIN OR MOISTURE. This unit should be used with 12V DC only.

**CAUTION:** To prevent electric shocks and fire hazards, do NOT use any other power source.

**NOTE:**
The rating plate (serial number plate) is on the bottom of the unit.

**CAUTION:**
To prevent electric shock, do not open the cabinet. No user-serviceable parts inside. Refer servicing to qualified service personnel.

Due to design modifications, data given in this instruction book are subject to possible change without prior notice.

The apparatus shall not be exposed to dripping or splashing and that no objects filled with liquids, such as vases, shall be placed close to the apparatus.

**WARNING:** Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.
Thank you for purchasing the JVC HD CAMERA RECORDER.

These instructions are for the GY-HD200U/CHU, GY-HD200E/CHE and GY-HD201E/CHE.

- A lens is included with the GY-HD200U, GY-HD200E and GY-HD201E.
- A lens is not included with the GY-HD200CHU, GY-HD200CHE and GY-HD201CHE.
- IEEE1394 input is possible with the GY-HD200U/CHU and GY-HD201E/CHU.

Explanations concerning unique GY-HD200U/CHU and GY-HD201E/CHU functions are set off by the (GY-HD200U/GY-HD201E) only) notice.

Information applicable only to the GY-HD200U/CHU is marked by (U model only). Information applicable only to the GY-HD201E/CHE, GY-HD201CHE is marked by (E model only).

This device records in HDV format or DV format. DV format can record and play back SD (Standard Definition) video on Mini DV videocassettes.

1/3" 3-CCD with 1,110,000 effective pixels employed. Digital signal processing for reproduction of HDV/DV high-quality picture.

- Multi-Zone Auto Iris Detection Circuit
- Lens is not included with the GY-HD200CHU, GY-HD200CHE and GY-HD201CHE.

Multi-zone auto iris detection circuit ensures optimum iris position even in back light conditions or when a bright subject moves in a frame.

- IEEE1394 input is possible with the GY-HD200U/CHU and GY-HD201E/CHE.
- This device records and plays back in the SP mode. Recorded video and audio contents are for private use. JVC cannot assume liabilities that may derive from the impossibility of normal recording or playback of video or audio due to malfunction of this device or the videocassette set.

* All product names in this manual are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies. Marks such as ™, ® and © are not used in this manual.
INTRODUCTION

Precautions for Proper Use

• Supply voltage: Make sure that the power is between 11 V and 15 V DC. If the power voltage is too low, abnormal color and images may occur.
• Allowable ambient temperature and humidity: Be sure to use this device in the allowable temperature range of 0°C to 40°C and a relative humidity of 30% to 80%. Using this device at a temperature or humidity outside the allowable ranges could result not only in malfunction but the impact on the CCD elements could be serious as small white spots may be generated.
• Strong electromagnetic waves or magnetism: Noise may appear in the picture or audio and/or the colors may be incorrect if the camera is used near a radio or television transmitting antenna, in places where strong magnetic fields are generated by transformers, motors, etc., or near devices emitting radio waves, such as transceivers or cellular phones.
• Use of wireless microphone near the camera: When a wireless microphone or wireless microphone tuner is used near the camera during recording, the tuner could pick up noise.
• Avoid using or placing this device in places:
  • subject to extreme heat or cold;
  • with excessive dust or dust;
  • with high humidity or moisture;
  • subject to smoke or vapour such as near a cooking range;
  • subject to strong vibrations or on an unstable surface;
  • also do not leave this device for long hours in a parked car under direct sunlight or near room heating equipment.
• Do not leave this device where it is subject to radiation or X-rays or where corrosive gasses occur.
• Protect this device from being splashed with water (especially when shooting in the rain).
• Protect this device from getting wet when shooting on a beach.
• In addition, salt and sand may adhere to the camera body. Be sure to clean the camera after use.
• Protect this device against penetration of dust when using it in a place subject to sandy dust.
• Optical performance of a lens: Due to the optical performance of the lens, color aberration and other phenomena (magnification chromatic aberration) may occur at the periphery of the image. This is not a malfunction.
• Noise may appear in the viewfinder when switching between the playback picture and the EIE picture.
• Use this device in an upright position.
• If placed on a side, heat release efficiency will deteriorate, adversely affecting the tape transport. Depending on circumstances the tape may also be damaged.
• Vibrations: Colors may fail to appear and/or the image and sound may be disturbed during VTR playback in locations subjected to strong vibrations.
• Precautions for transportation: Do not drop or hit this device against a hard object.
• Remove the videocassette before transporting this device.

Routine and Periodical Maintenance

This device incorporates precision mechanical parts, which will collect dirt, wear out and deteriorate as this device is used. After this device has been used for a long period even in a normal environment, the heads, drums and tape transport mechanisms also collect dirt. Especially, dust which penetrates the inside of the VTR section during outdoor use will promote the wear and deterioration of mechanical parts by causing poor contact between tape and heads or failing to maintain the video and audio quality at high levels. To prevent wear and deterioration, clean the mechanical parts using a head cleaning tape as routine maintenance. However, cleaning with a head cleaning tape alone is not enough for cleaning the entire tape transport mechanism, so it is also recommended to apply periodical maintenance (inspection) to prevent the sudden occurrence of failure. As the replacement, adjustment and servicing of parts require advanced skill and equipment, please consult the person in charge of professional video equipment at your nearest JVC-authorized service agent.

Head Cleaning

- To maintain beautiful pictures and sound, be sure to use a head cleaning tape to clean the heads periodically.
- When using a head cleaning tape, do not load or eject a videocassette while cleaning the heads.
- Please use cleaning tape produced by JVC. Adhere to the following precautions when using the head cleaning tape.

1. Insert the cleaning tape. Press the PLAY/STILL button after the cleaning tape is fully loaded.
2. Do not use the tape more than four times at the most for each cleaning.
3. Use the following chart as a guide for periodical head cleaning.

Precautions for Use of Head Cleaning Tape

Please use cleaning tape produced by JVC. Adhere to the following precautions when using the head cleaning tape.

1. Insert the cleaning tape. Press the PLAY/STILL button after the cleaning tape is fully loaded.
2. Do not use this device where it is subject to radiation or X-rays or where corrosive gasses occur.
3. Protect this device from being splashed with water (especially when shooting in the rain).
4. Protect this device from getting wet when shooting on a beach.
5. In addition, salt and sand may adhere to the camera body. Be sure to clean the camera after use.
6. Protect this device against penetration of dust when using it in a place subject to sandy dust.
7. Optical performance of a lens: Due to the optical performance of the lens, color aberration and other phenomena (magnification chromatic aberration) may occur at the periphery of the image. This is not a malfunction.
8. Noise may appear in the viewfinder when switching between the playback picture and the EIE picture.
9. Use this device in an upright position.
10. If placed on a side, heat release efficiency will deteriorate, adversely affecting the tape transport. Depending on circumstances the tape may also be damaged.
11. Vibrations: Colors may fail to appear and/or the image and sound may be disturbed during VTR playback in locations subjected to strong vibrations.
12. Precautions for transportation: Do not drop or hit this device against a hard object.
13. Remove the videocassette before transporting this device.

Note 1) When used in a low humidity environment, head cleaning should be conducted at intervals half of those given in the chart above.
Note 2) If an M-DV 80 tape is used immediately after head cleaning, the "HEAD CLEANING REQUIRED" indicator may remain on. In this case, let the tape run as the indicator will turn off after the tape has run for a while.
Note 3) Use the cleaning tape in the room temperature (10°C to 35°C).
Note 4) The cleaning tape case contains instructions for use of the cleaning tape. However, some of these instructions differ from the contents of this sheet.
Note 5) If the "HEAD CLEANING REQUIRED" does not disappear after repeated head cleanings, the recording tape may be abnormal. Avoid excessive repeated use of the head cleaning tape.
INTRODUCTION

Battery Pack to be Used

This device can use any of the following batteries. (Factory setting)
- U model: Anton Bauer battery
- E model: IDX battery

Recommended batteries
- U model: Dionic 90 (Anton Bauer)
- E model: Endura-T (IDX)

CAUTION
Use only the recommended batteries. If a heavy battery is used, the battery may fall out depending on the way the HD camera recorder is used.

Videocassette to be Used

- Use JVC’s videocassette tapes marked with the “M” symbol.
- Mini DV videocassette: M-DV63HD, M-DV83PROHD
  Do not use M-DV80.
- Videocassettes cannot be used upside down.
- Avoid storing a videocassette with its tape not being completely wound, as this may damage the tape. Rewind it to the beginning before placing a cassette into storage.
- Store videocassettes in a place with little humidity and good ventilation where mold does not form.
- After a videocassette tape has been used repeatedly, it becomes unable to maintain full performance due to an increase in noise caused by dropout, etc. Do not continue to use a dirty or damaged tape, as this will reduce the rotary head life.
- Videocassette tapes with the “M” symbol are provided with a switch on the back to prevent accidental erasure.
- Slide the switch to SAVE to protect the required recording in the tape from being overwritten.
- To record on the tape, slide the switch to REC.

For recording and storing videotapes in the best condition

Observe the following instructions for the best recording and storage of videotapes.
- Take care of the conditions of handling videotapes. It is recommended that you record and store videotapes in the environment below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Temperature</th>
<th>Recording</th>
<th>Storage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15°C to 25°C</td>
<td>Short period (Up to 10 years)</td>
<td>Long period (Over 10 years)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Humidity</td>
<td>35% to 75%</td>
<td>35% to 75%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hourly temperature change</td>
<td>Less than 10°C</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hourly humidity change</td>
<td>Less than 10%</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Do not leave the videotapes neglected for a long period. If videotapes are left wound for a long period of time, it may result in distortion of the tape. Also, it may cause tape-to-tape adhesion (known as blocking). It is recommended that videotapes be unspooled and rewound once a year for refreshing.
- When tapes are not in use, store them in cases and on end. Storage cases protect videotapes from humidity, dust and ultraviolet light. Keep tapes in cases and do not store them lying flat. When housed in a horizontal position, pressure from other tapes can cause distortions and deformations of the tape edges.
- If this device has been cooled down in a cold place and is then carried to a warm place, the moisture contained in the warm air may adhere to the head drum or tape guides and be cooled into water droplets. This phenomenon is referred to as condensation (dew). When this occurs, the head drum and tape guides are covered with droplets allowing the tape to be stuck to them, leading to tape damage.
- Condensation occurs in the following cases:
  - When this device is suddenly moved from a cold place to a warm place.
  - When a room heater has just started or when this device is exposed directly to cold air from an air conditioner.
  - When this device is placed in a very humid place.

Do not leave the videocassette inserted when moving the camera under conditions where the temperature environment changes. After moving this device, do not use until the internal parts have stabilized.

- „CONDENSATION ON DRUM” is displayed on the LCD monitor and in the viewfinder when condensation occurs in this device.

Condensation

- Keep the power on until the warning message disappears.
  If the power is turned off while the warning message is displayed, condensation may remain in the device even if the warning message is not displayed. Wait until this device is completely dry before using.
- Pay attention to condensation even before the condensation indication appears.
  As condensation forms gradually, the condensation indication may not appear for the first 10-15 minutes after condensation has formed inside.
  In an extremely cold place, the condensation could freeze and turn into frost. In such a case, it takes an additional 2-3 hours for the frost to first melt into condensation and then to be dissolved.
- To prevent condensation
  When moving this device from one place to another where the temperatures are greatly different, first remove the videocassette, place this device in a tightly sealed vinyl bag, and then move it to a new environment. To ensure no condensation occurs, allow the temperature of this device in the bag to reach that of the new environment before using it.

Characteristic CCD Phenomena

Smear and Blooming
Due to the physical structure of a CCD it is possible to induce vertical streaking (called “smear”) when shooting an extremely bright light source. Another effect is the expansion of light around a bright light or object (called “blooming”). The CCD employed in this device is characterized by inducing very little smear or blooming. Nevertheless, please take note that smear or blooming may be induced when shooting a bright light source.

Moire or Aliasing
Shooting stripes or fine patterns may cause a jagged effect or a banding in fine mesh patterns.

White dots
High temperatures can cause CCD sensor pixels to produce the effect of white dots in the image. This condition is conspicuous especially when gain is applied.
This is a characteristic of the charged-coupled device (CCD). As far as possible, use this device under conditions where the temperature of this device does not increase.
ZOOM servo control lever
To operate the servo zoom feature with this lever, set the ZOOM knob to “S”.
- Pressing the “W” section of this lever increases the angle of the lens for a wider shooting angle.
- Pressing the “T” section of this lever narrows the lens angle perspective for telephoto shots.
- Pushing harder changes the speed of the zoom.

IRIS mode switch
• A: Activates the auto iris feature.
• M: Allows manual iris control.

Momentary auto iris button
When the IRIS mode switch is at “M”, pushing this button activates the Auto Iris Function while it is held down only.

IRIS speed adjusting control
For adjusting the iris operation speed.

MEMO
If the speed becomes too fast, hunting may occur. To avoid the phenomena described above, perform adjustment again.

FILTER thread
Protect the lens with a clear filter or UV filter by screwing the filter onto the thread inside the lens hood from the front.
Other filters can be used for various effects.

ZOOM servo connector
Connect an optional zoom servo unit here.

ZOOM mode knob
S: Servo zoom mode. Allows operation by the zoom servo control lever.
M: Manual zoom mode. Allows zoom control by the zoom lever.

BACK FOCUS ring/fixing screw
For back focus adjustment only. Secure with the screw knob after adjustment.

MACRO focusing ring (for close-up shooting)
By rotating this ring in the direction of the arrow, close-up shooting of very small objects becomes possible.
Normal focus adjustment and zooming are not available in the macro mode.
To shoot images in the macro mode, set the focus ring to the infinite position (∞) and the zoom ring to the maximum wide-angle position. To adjust the focus of the macro image, rotate this ring in the direction of the arrow until the object is focused.

CAUTION
- The back-focus knob is located close to the macro ring, be careful not to mistake the back-focus knob for the macro ring.
- After the required operation, be sure to return the macro focusing ring to the normal position.

MEMO
- It is not activated in preset, full auto shooting, full auto white balance and color bar modes.
- * See “White Balance Adjustment” on page 51.

Lens mounting ring/Lens lock lever
Hold the lens and use the lever to turn the ring ant clockwise to release lens.
To mount lens make sure the lens guide pin fits well, and then turn the ring clockwise until firm.

ZEBRA Zebra switch
When this switch is ON, a zebra pattern is imposed on the viewfinder or LCD areas having luminance levels in accordance with the menu settings made for the video signal. This pattern can be used as a reference for manual adjustment of the lens iris. Zebra patterns are also displayed during color bar display when this switch is set to ON.
- The default value is 70% - 80%. The luminance level can be changed with the ZEBRA setting in the LCD/ VTR[1/4] menu screen.
- * See page 86.

AWS Auto white balance button
When the WHT.BAL switch on page 15 is set to A or B and you press this button, the white balance is automatically adjusted.
- * It is not activated in preset, full auto shooting, full auto white balance and color bar modes.
- X See “How to Use Skin Detail” on pages 99 and 100.
- The Skin Detail color tone areas are not indicated while the color bar or VTR playback picture is shown in the viewfinder or on the LCD monitor.

Shoe
This is the mounting knob for the microphone holder.

Microphone holder
Make it possible to attach the provided microphone or a separately sold microphone.
- X See “Attaching the Microphone (Provided)” on page 33.

Front tally lamp
This lamp lights up when this device enters the record mode. It blinks during the transition to the record mode.
When the tape has run out, or the VTR enters the warning mode, it blinks quickly.
- Use the FRONT TALLY item on the OTHERS[1/2] menu screen to select whether or not the lamp should light and the lighting pattern.
- X See page 93.

Lens control connector
Connect 12-pin lens control cable from lens here.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pin No.</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Pin No.</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Return switch</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Iris position</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>VTR trigger</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>IRIS ANT INPUT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>END</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>EXTENDER position</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Lens AUTO/MANU control</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>ZOOM position</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>ZEBRA control</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>+12V DC</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CONTROLS, INDICATORS AND CONNECTORS

Rear Section

Connecting the Earphone Cable
To reduce the emission of unwanted radio waves, be sure to attach the provided clamp filter as shown in the figure below.
- Attach the clamp filter as close to this device as possible, as shown in the figure.

Back tally lamp
This lamp lights up when this device enters the record mode. It blinks during the transition to the record mode. When the tape has run out, or the VTR enters the warning mode, it blinks quickly.
- Use the BACK TALLY item on the OTHERS[1/2] menu screen to select whether or not the lamp should light and the lighting pattern.
- See page 93.

PHONES (Earphone jack)
This is a stereo mini-jack for connecting an earphone for audio monitoring. Plug in an earphone or headphone with a 3.5 mm diameter plug. The earphone can also be used to monitor alarm tones in accordance with the circumstances.
- The audio channel to be output is selected with the AUDIO MONITOR item on the AUDIO/MIC[2/2] menu screen and MONITOR SELECT switch 3 on page 19.
- The audio output level is adjusted with the Audio monitor volume control 4 on page 19.

SHoulder belt hooks
Allows you to attach a separately sold shoulder belt.

 LCD Door

Connecting the Earphone Cable
To reduce the emission of unwanted radio waves, be sure to attach the provided clamp filter as shown in the figure below.
- Attach the clamp filter as close to this device as possible, as shown in the figure.

1. Back tally lamp
This lamp lights up when this device enters the record mode. It blinks during the transition to the record mode. When the tape has run out, or the VTR enters the warning mode, it blinks quickly.
- Use the BACK TALLY item on the OTHERS[1/2] menu screen to select whether or not the lamp should light and the lighting pattern.
- See page 93.

2. PHONES (Earphone jack)
This is a stereo mini-jack for connecting an earphone for audio monitoring. Plug in an earphone or headphone with a 3.5 mm diameter plug. The earphone can also be used to monitor alarm tones in accordance with the circumstances.
- The audio channel to be output is selected with the AUDIO MONITOR item on the AUDIO/MIC[2/2] menu screen and MONITOR SELECT switch 3 on page 19.
- The audio output level is adjusted with the Audio monitor volume control 4 on page 19.

SHoulder belt hooks
Allows you to attach a separately sold shoulder belt.

3. LCD monitor
Shows a color camera image or the VTR playback picture.
- It is also used for displaying the following:
  - Menu Setting screens
  - Characters showing the whether this device is set to shooting mode or VTR playback mode
  - Date and time and time code
  - Audio level meter
  - Warning indications, etc.
- See page 82.

4. Shoulder belt hooks
Allows you to attach a separately sold shoulder belt.

5. MONITOR SELECT switch
Allows you to select the CH-1 and CH-2 audio channel audio levels.
- AUTO: The audio level is automatically adjusted according to the input level. When excessive audio is input, the limiter works to suppress the audio level.
  - The “AUTO” LED in the CH-1/CH-2 AUDIO SELECT 7 on page 15 lights.
- MANU: Allows you to adjust the audio levels using the CH-1/CH-2 AUDIO LEVEL menu on page 15.
  - Set AUDIO LIMITER on the AUDIO/MIC[1/2] menu screen to use limiter functions when excessive audio is input.
- See “AUDIO LIMITER” on page 84.

6. LCD BRIGHT +/- LCD brightness +/- button
This button is for adjusting the brightness of the LCD monitor display.
- Pushing the button in the + direction makes the monitor brighter.
- Pushing the button in the – direction makes the monitor darker.
- Pushing the +/- buttons simultaneously returns the setting to the standard setting.

7. [CH-1/CH-2 AUDIO SELECT] CH-1/CH-2 audio selector switch
Selects the method of adjusting the CH-1 and CH-2 audio channel audio levels.
- AUTO: The audio level is automatically adjusted according to the input level. When excessive audio is input, the limiter works to suppress the audio level.
- The “AUTO” LED in the CH-1/CH-2 AUDIO LEVEL area 9 on page 15 lights.
- MANU: Allows you to adjust the audio levels using the CH-1/CH-2 AUDIO LEVEL menu on page 15.
  - Set AUDIO LIMITER on the AUDIO/MIC[1/2] menu screen to use limiter functions when excessive audio is input.
- See “AUDIO LIMITER” on page 84.

8. [TC DISPLAY] TC/UB display switch
Selects the contents displayed on the TC/UB/CLOCK menu. Must be set before powering on.

9. [TC GENE.] Time code generator setting switch
Switch for setting the time code generator to preset mode or regeneration mode. It is also used to select the time code run mode when the preset mode is selected.
- FREE: The preset mode is selected, and the time code run mode becomes the FREE run mode.
- Set to this position to record with the time code or user’s bits set anew (preset). In this setting, the time code always operates in the run mode.
  - If this setting is used when recording scenes one after another, the time codes become discontinuous at the transition points between scenes.
- REC: The preset mode is selected, and the time code run mode becomes the REC run mode.
  - Set to this position to record with the time code or user’s bits set anew (preset). The time code operates in the run mode during recording only. If this setting is used when recording scenes one after another, the time codes are recorded as continuous time codes.
- REGEN: Regeneration mode, in which this device reads existing time codes on the tape and records time codes in continuation of the existing ones. Set to this position when you want to add additional time codes to time codes already recorded on the tape.

MEMO
- The volume of the alarm sound is set with the ALARM VR LEVEL item on the OTHERS[1/2] menu screen.
- When using a stereo jack and stereo sound should be output, the following setting should be performed:
  - Set the MONITOR SELECT switch 3 on page 19 to BOTH.
  - Set the AUDIO MONITOR item on the AUDIO/MIC[2/2] menu screen to STEREO.

- The preset of time code and user’s bits is performed on the TC/UB/CLOCK menu.
- See page 44.
- See “TCUB/CLOCK Menu Screen” on page 90.

CAM/VTR Camera/VTR mode switch button
Each time you press this button, the mode switches between camera mode and VTR mode.
- When you do this, the VTR indicator 9 on page 19 lights.
  - Displays the following statuses:
    - While the mode is being switched: Flashing
    - In VTR mode: Lit
    - In camera mode: Off
  - Select the Camera mode to record the camera image.
  - Select the VTR mode to playback VTR or to input the HDV/DV signal from the IEEE1394 connector 3 on page 16. (HDV/DV signal input is possible with the GY-HD200 [DV/HDD201].)
  - When the power is turned on, the mode becomes the Camera mode.
CONTROLS, INDICATORS AND CONNECTORS

Right Side Section

1. **Monitoring speaker (Check pad)**
   - In the Camera mode, the input sound can be EE monitored.
   - In the VTR mode, the speaker outputs the VTR playback sound. In the VTR mode, the HDV/DV input sound can be EE monitored. (HDV/DV signal input is possible with the GD-H200U/GY-H201E.)
   - The sound to be output is selected with the MONITOR SELECT switch on page 19.
   - The sound level is adjusted with the MONITOR sound level volume. This speaker also outputs various warning sounds superimposed on other sound.

2. **Check pad set screw**
   - Screw for adjusting the height of the check pad.

3. **MONITOR** Audio monitor volume control
   - Adjusts the volume of the monitoring loudspeaker and earphones.

4. **VF BRIGHT** Viewfinder brightness adjustment
   - To adjust the brightness of the viewfinder.

5. **PEAKING** Contour adjustment
   - To adjust the contours of the LCD monitor and viewfinder image.
   - When the Focus Assist function is running, this control does not operate.

6. **FOCUS ASSIST** Focus assist button
   - When this button is pressed during shooting, the area of focus is displayed in blue, red or green, making it easy to focus accurately.

**MEMO**
- When FOCUS ASSIST on the LCD/VF[1/4] menu screen is set to ACCU-FOCUS and this button is pressed, ACCU FOCUS functions with FOCUS ASSIST. This makes depth of field shallower, making it easier to focus.
- This button has the same function as the FOCUS ASSIST button in the Top Section.

7. **POWER** Power On/Off switch
   - Switch that turns the power ON/OFF. When the power is OFF, “OFF” is displayed in the LCD monitor or viewfinder.
   - Wait at least 5 seconds if you need to turn the power on again.

8. **REC trigger button (start/stop recording)**
   - Start and stop recording using this button. (This works together with the REC trigger button on the top and the lens VTR trigger button.)
   - When “SPLIT” is set for the 1394 REC TRIGGER item on the OTHERS[2/2] menu screen, this button becomes the start/stop recording button for an external device.

9. **VF BRIGHT** Viewfinder brightness adjustment
   - To adjust the brightness of the viewfinder. See page 49.

10. **FILTER** ND filter switch
    - Switches the built-in ND filter.
    - OFF: Turns the filter OFF (FILTER OFF)
    - 1: Cuts the light intensity to approximately 1/4. (1/4ND)
    - 2: Cuts the light intensity to approximately 1/16. (1/16ND)
    - When you change this switch, the type of the new ND filter is displayed in the LCD monitor or viewfinder.

**CAUTION**
- If you switch the ND filter while shooting is in progress, the picture may be distorted or noise may occur in the audio.
- See “Camera Settings” on page 54.

11. **STATUS** Status/Menu button
    - Pressing this button in the normal screen mode (condition in which the menu screen is not shown) displays a status screen in the viewfinder or on the LCD monitor. The displayed status screen changes each time the button is pressed.
    - See “Status Screens” on page 22.
    - Pressing this button for more than 1 second in the normal screen mode displays the menu screen in the viewfinder or on the LCD monitor. Pressing this button while the menu screen is displayed in the viewfinder or on the LCD monitor makes the menu screen disappear.
    - See “Setting Menu Screens” on page 72.

12. **GAIN** Sensitivity selector switch
    - Electronically boosts the light sensitivity when there is insufficient illumination on the subject.
    - The boosting level differs depending on the switch position as follows:
      - FAW (Full Auto White Balance) mode can be set to A, B or C. When FAW is selected, the ND filter switch is not available.
      - When the FULL AUTO switch is set to A, B or C, the following functions are activated:
        - **ND FILTER** ND filter switch
          - OFF: Turns the filter OFF (FILTER OFF)
          - 1: Cuts the light intensity to approximately 1/4. (1/4ND)
          - 2: Cuts the light intensity to approximately 1/16. (1/16ND)
        - **PRST** Set the initial white balance setting in the AUTO mode.
          - DX: Set the initial white balance setting in the AUTO mode.
          - DS: Set the initial white balance setting in the AUTO mode.
          - DB: Set the initial white balance setting in the AUTO mode.
          - **PROG** Set the initial white balance setting in the AUTO mode.
            - If the PROG switch is set to A, B or C, the following functions are activated:
              - **ND FILTER** ND filter switch
                - OFF: Turns the filter OFF (FILTER OFF)
                - 1: Cuts the light intensity to approximately 1/4. (1/4ND)
                - 2: Cuts the light intensity to approximately 1/16. (1/16ND)
              - **PRST** Set the initial white balance setting in the AUTO mode.

**MEMO**
- Fine-tune red and blue to match the white adjusted in auto white balance in WHITE BALANCE menu screen. (Available only when this switch is set to A or B.)
- See “WHITE BALANCE Menu Screen” on page 82.
### CONTROLS, INDICATORS AND CONNECTORS

#### Left Side Section

**Viewfinder connector (6-pin)**
Connect the cable from the viewfinder here.

**[CH-2 INPUT] CH-2 audio input connector selector switch**
Selects the CH-2 audio input connector.

**[VIDEO OUT] Video output terminal (RCA)**
This is a terminal for composite video signal output.
- Select whether or not to output a signal in SET UP on the VIDEO FORMAT[2/2] menu screen. (Only for U model)
- Set ANALOG OUT CHAR. item on the OTHERS[1/2] menu screen to ON to output menu setting screens and warnings from this terminal.

**[REMOTE] REMOTE terminal (Round 6-pin)**
Some functions of this camera can be controlled externally.
Connect to a remote control unit (RM-LP55/RM-LP57).
- See “Connect a Remote Control Unit (RM-LP55/RM-LP57)” on page 68.

**[DC INPUT] DC input terminal (XLR 4-pin)**
This is the 12V DC power input terminal. Connect to the AC adapter.
When a battery is installed and a cable is connected to this terminal, power supply from the battery stops and power is supplied by this terminal.

---

**CAUTION**
When connecting a component that does not require +48 V power supply, make sure that the switch is not set to MIC+48V before the component is connected.

You can select the normal input level for MIC and MIC+48V in the INPUT1, 2 MIC REF. item on the AUDIO/MIC[1/2] menu screen.
- See page 84.

**INPUT1/INPUT2** INPUT1/INPUT2 audio input connectors
These are audio input connectors for connecting to an external audio device or microphone.

- Set the AUDIO INPUT switch according to the device to be connected.
- Set the CH-2 audio input connector using the CH-2 INPUT switch.
- The CH-2 audio from the set connector is recorded.

**Shoulder pad slide button**
Button to adjust the position of the shoulder pad. When you press this button, you can move the position of the shoulder pad forward or backward.

**Cassette cover**
Sliding the EJECT switch on page 18 located on the top section opens this cover to allow insertion or removal of the videocassette.

---

**[IEEE1394] IEEE1394 switch**
Set according to the image format of the input/output signal and playback signal of the IEEE1394 terminal.
- HDV : Set to this for HDV format.
- DV : Set to this for DV format.

**[Y/Pb/Pr] Component Y/Pb/Pr signal output terminal (BNC × 3)**
Outputs analog component signals (Y/Pb/Pr) signals.
- Select whether or not to add setup signals to DV format signals in SET UP item on the VIDEO FORMAT[2/2] menu screen. (Only for U model)
- Set ANALOG OUT CHAR. item on the OTHERS[1/2] menu screen to ON to output menu setting screens and warnings from this terminal.

**REMOTE** REMOTE terminal (Round 6-pin)
Some functions of this camera can be controlled externally.
Connect to a remote control unit (RM-LP55/RM-LP57).
- See “Connect a Remote Control Unit (RM-LP55/RM-LP57)” on page 68.
**CONTROLS, INDICATORS AND CONNECTORS**

Top Section

- **Viewfinder**
  - Displays the camera image and the playback picture.
- **Eyepiece**
  - Ensures that ambient light does not reach the viewfinder screen or falls into the eye of the cameraman.
- **Eyepiece focus ring**
  - You can adjust the position of the eyepiece forward or backward by loosening this ring.
- **Eyepiece mounting ring**
  - You can adjust the position of the viewfinder left or right by loosening this ring.
- **Slide mounting ring**
  - You can adjust the position of the viewfinder left or right by loosening this ring.
- **Clamp**
  - Attach the microphone cable here.
- **FOCUS ASSIST** Focus assist button
  - When you press this button during shooting, the area of focus is displayed in blue, red or green, making it easy to focus accurately.

MEMO
- When FOCUS ASSIST on the LCD/VF[1/4] menu screen is set to ACCU-FOCUS and this button is pressed, ACCU FOCUS functions with FOCUS ASSIST. This increases depth of field shallower, making it easier to focus.
- This button has the same function as the FOCUS ASSIST button in the Right Side Section.

- **[MONITOR SELECT]** Audio monitor selector switch
  - When you release FAS mode, all of the settings return to the previous modes.

**CAUTION**
When the power is turned on while the camera is in the FAS mode, it takes about 10 seconds before the automatic adjustment of FAS is completed.

- **[REC]** REC trigger button
  - Start and stop recording using this button.
  - (This works together with the REC trigger button on the right panel and the lens VTR trigger button.)

- **[REC LOCK]** REC LOCK switch
  - Slide this switch in the direction of the arrow to lock the [REC] trigger button. Use this to prevent unwanted recording.
  - (The REC trigger button on the right panel and the lens VTR trigger button are not locked.)

- **[POWER]** Power switch
  - Slide this switch to the side to insert or eject a videocassette tape.
  - (The REC trigger button on the right panel and the lens VTR trigger button are not locked.)

- **[STOP]** Stop button
  - Press this button in the stop or fast forward mode to set the VTR operation mode indicator to indicate STOP, playback operations become possible.

- **[REW]** Rewind button
  - Press this button to rewind the tape.
  - • Pressing this button during playback, still picture playback or forward search initiates reverse search.

- **[PLAY/STILL]** Play/still button
  - Press to start playback. Press to enter the still picture mode during playback, in the stop mode or in the search mode.

- **[EJECT]** Eject switch and LED
  - Slide this switch to the side to insert or eject a videocassette tape.
  - The LED lights while ejecting is in progress.

MEMO
- It takes a few seconds before the videocassette is ejected. Do not close the cassette cover during the eject operation.
- Do not touch the cassette insertion slot or cassette during the eject operation. This could result in damage.

- **Operation cover**
  - Open this cover when operating in the playback mode. Otherwise, keep this cover closed.
  - This cover can be opened by sliding it to the side.

MEMO
When the STOP button is pressed in the Camera mode to set the VTR operation mode indicator to indicate STOP, playback operations become possible.

- **Battery adapter**
  - Attach the battery.
  - U model: Anton Bauer battery
  - E model: IDX battery
  - • See “Battery Operation” on page 37.

- **[FULL AUTO]** Full auto shooting (FAS) switch
  - This is the ON/OFF switch for FAS mode.
  - • During FAS mode, "FAS" is displayed on the LCD monitor or the viewfinder.
  - • FAS mode works together with the auto iris and auto level control (ALC) modes and automatically adjusts to the optimal video signal level and white balance.
  - • You can select automatic adjustment mode or manual adjustment mode for audio recording level.
  - • If there are color bars, this automatically sets to camera video.
  - • Auto iris mode operates even if the lens iris mode switch is set to the manual position.
  - • The gain changes continuously until it reaches the maximum ALC MAX setting, and the shutter speed also changes continuously.

- **[FULL AUTO]** Full auto shooting (FAS) switch
  - This is the ON/OFF switch for FAS mode.
  - • During FAS mode, "FAS" is displayed on the LCD monitor or the viewfinder.
  - • FAS mode works together with the auto iris and auto level control (ALC) modes and automatically adjusts to the optimal video signal level and white balance.
  - • You can select automatic adjustment mode or manual adjustment mode for audio recording level.
  - • If there are color bars, this automatically sets to camera video.
  - • Auto iris mode operates even if the lens iris mode switch is set to the manual position.
  - • The gain changes continuously until it reaches the maximum ALC MAX setting, and the shutter speed also changes continuously.

- **[DISPLAY]** Display button
  - When LCD+VF in the LCD/VF[4/4] menu display is set to OFF, press the DISPLAY button for 2 seconds to switch between the LCD screen and the viewfinder screen.
  - When LCD+VF in the LCD/VF[4/4] menu display is set to ON, press the DISPLAY button for 2 seconds to switch the LCD screen ON and OFF. Press the DISPLAY button briefly to change the display mode for the LCD screen as follows.
  - Only image displayed
  - Image and characters displayed

  - • See “Magnified Status Indications on the LCD Monitor” on page 29.

- **[FOCUS ASSIST]** Focus assist button
  - When this button is pressed in the Camera mode, the area of focus is displayed in blue, red or green, making it easy to focus accurately.
  - • When you release FAS mode, all of the settings return to the previous modes.

- **[STOP]** Stop button
  - Press to enter the stop mode.

- **[REW]** Rewind button
  - Press this button to rewind the tape.
  - • Pressing this button during playback, still picture playback or forward search initiates reverse search.

- **[PLAY/STILL]** Play/still button
  - Press to enter the still picture mode during playback, in the stop mode or in the search mode.

- **[EJECT]** Eject switch and LED
  - Slide this switch to the side to insert or eject a videocassette tape.
  - The LED lights while ejecting is in progress.

- **[POWER]** Power switch
  - Slide this switch to the side to insert or eject a videocassette tape.
  - (The REC trigger button on the right panel and the lens VTR trigger button are not locked.)

- **[STOP]** Stop button
  - Press this button in the stop or fast forward mode to set the VTR operation mode indicator to indicate STOP, playback operations become possible.

- **[REW]** Rewind button
  - Press this button to rewind the tape.
  - • Pressing this button during playback, still picture playback or forward search initiates reverse search.

- **[PLAY/STILL]** Play/still button
  - Press to enter the still picture mode during playback, in the stop mode or in the search mode.

- **[EJECT]** Eject switch and LED
  - Slide this switch to the side to insert or eject a videocassette tape.
  - The LED lights while ejecting is in progress.

- **[POWER]** Power switch
  - Slide this switch to the side to insert or eject a videocassette tape.
  - (The REC trigger button on the right panel and the lens VTR trigger button are not locked.)

- **[STOP]** Stop button
  - Press this button in the stop or fast forward mode to set the VTR operation mode indicator to indicate STOP, playback operations become possible.

- **[REW]** Rewind button
  - Press this button to rewind the tape.
  - • Pressing this button during playback, still picture playback or forward search initiates reverse search.

- **[PLAY/STILL]** Play/still button
  - Press to enter the still picture mode during playback, in the stop mode or in the search mode.

- **[EJECT]** Eject switch and LED
  - Slide this switch to the side to insert or eject a videocassette tape.
  - The LED lights while ejecting is in progress.

- **[POWER]** Power switch
  - Slide this switch to the side to insert or eject a videocassette tape.
  - (The REC trigger button on the right panel and the lens VTR trigger button are not locked.)

- **[STOP]** Stop button
  - Press this button in the stop or fast forward mode to set the VTR operation mode indicator to indicate STOP, playback operations become possible.
### CONTROLS, INDICATORS AND CONNECTORS

#### Recording and Image Output Formats

This device supports HDV and DV image formats. This device also has various output terminals. (Composite, analog component, IEEE1394)

During recording and playback, image formats from each of the output terminals are as shown in the table below.

**Notes about the table**
- (Shaded): Indicates the setting item in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen.
- N/A: Terminal is not available.
- Same format as the left.

#### When recording camera images

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recording (Shooting)</th>
<th>Rec on Tape</th>
<th>IEEE 1394 Out</th>
<th>Component Out (EE Out)</th>
<th>Composite Out (EE Out)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>HDV</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDV-HD60P</td>
<td>720/60p</td>
<td>←</td>
<td>← 720/60p</td>
<td>480/60i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDV-HD50P</td>
<td>720/50p</td>
<td>←</td>
<td>← 720/50p</td>
<td>576/50i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDV-HD24P</td>
<td>720/24p</td>
<td>←</td>
<td>← 720/24p</td>
<td>480/24i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DV</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U model only</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DV-60I</td>
<td>480/60i</td>
<td>←</td>
<td>← 480/60i</td>
<td>←</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DV-24P</td>
<td>480/24p</td>
<td>←</td>
<td>← 480/24p</td>
<td>←</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E model only</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DV-50I</td>
<td>576/50i</td>
<td>←</td>
<td>← 576/50i</td>
<td>←</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>HDV</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[1080I CAMERA]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>menu item</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ON</strong></td>
<td>60/30</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>1080/60i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>50/25</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>1080/50i</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### In PLAY mode

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Playback</th>
<th>IEEE 1394 Out</th>
<th>Component Out (EE Out)</th>
<th>Composite Out (EE Out)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>HDV</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>720/60p</td>
<td>←</td>
<td>← 720/60p</td>
<td>480/60i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>720/50p</td>
<td>←</td>
<td>← 720/50p</td>
<td>576/50i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>720/25p</td>
<td>←</td>
<td>← 720/25p</td>
<td>576/25i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>480/60p</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>← 480/60i</td>
<td>←</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>576/50p</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>← 576/50i</td>
<td>←</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DV</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U model only</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>480/60i</td>
<td>←</td>
<td>← 480/60i</td>
<td>←</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>480/24p</td>
<td>←</td>
<td>← 480/24p</td>
<td>←</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E model only</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>576/50i</td>
<td>←</td>
<td>← 576/50i</td>
<td>←</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**MEMO**

- Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE on the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.
- Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the playback signal.
Indications on the LCD Monitor and in the Viewfinder

In addition to showing the EE image and the playback picture, the LCD monitor and viewfinder are also used for the following character displays. To show characters on the LCD monitor, press the DISPLAY button briefly.

- Status screens (screens for checking the current camera settings)
- Auto white display (only displayed in the Camera mode)
- Menu setting screens
- Alarm message display
- Safety zone display (only displayed in the Camera mode)

**MEMO**
When ANALOG OUT CHAR. on the OTHERS[1/2] menu screen is ON, characters are also shown on images from the Y/PB/PR OUT and VIDEO OUT terminals.

**Status Screens**
Press the STATUS button while normal screen is displayed to show one of the status screens.

![STATUS button](image)

The contents of the status display are divided into these for the Camera mode and those for the VTR mode.

- Each time the STATUS button is pressed in the Camera mode, one of 9 status screens is displayed. (STATUS 0, 1, 2, 3, 4)
- One type of screen is displayed in the VTR mode.
- CAMERA MODE (display example)

![STATUS button](image)

**STATUS 0 Screen**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Status</th>
<th>Contents of Indications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gain value was changed</td>
<td>GAIN 0 dB, 3 dB, 6 dB, 9 dB, 12 dB, 15 dB, 18 dB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gain value reached the ALC</td>
<td>GAIN ALC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FULL-AUTO was turned ON/OFF</td>
<td>FULL AUTO ON, FULL AUTO OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZEBRA was turned ON/OFF</td>
<td>ZEBRA ON, ZEBRA OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shutter speed value was changed</td>
<td>SHUTTER 1/60, 1/60, 1/60, 1/60, 1/60, 1/60, 1/60, 1/60, 1/60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Variable shutter speed value was changed</td>
<td>V. SHUTTER 1/24 to 1/1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shutter was turned OFF</td>
<td>SHUTTER OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White balance value was changed</td>
<td>WHITE BAL A [3200K]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FILTER value was changed</td>
<td>FILTER OFF, FILTER NO. 1 [1/4ND], FILTER NO. 2 [1/16ND]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AE LEVEL value was changed</td>
<td>AE LEVEL –3, –2, –1, NORMAL, +1, +2, +3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AE gain value was changed</td>
<td>BLACK NORMAL, BLACK STRETCH 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, BLACK COMPRESS 1, 2, 3, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRESET TEMP. value was changed</td>
<td>WHITE BAL MOSH [3200K], WHITE BAL PRST [5600K]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REC switch was turned ON/OFF</td>
<td>REC SW ITCH LOCKED, REC SW ITCH UNLOCKED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REC LOCK switch was turned ON/OFF</td>
<td>REC SW ITCH LOCKED, REC SW ITCH UNLOCKED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REC switch was turned ON/OFF</td>
<td>REC SW ITCH LOCKED, REC SW ITCH UNLOCKED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REC LOCK switch was turned ON/OFF</td>
<td>REC SW ITCH LOCKED, REC SW ITCH UNLOCKED</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**STATUS 1 Screen**

**STATUS 2 Screen**

**STATUS 3 Screen**

**STATUS 4 Screen**

**STATUS 5 Screen**

**Event Indication**
When the Gain or Shutter Speed is changed manually, the setting condition is displayed for about 3 seconds at the time the change is made.
- Set the shutter display method to seconds or angle in SHUTTER DISP. on the LCD/VF[3/4] menu screen. (Only when frame rate is 24p or 25p mode)
### Indications on the LCD Monitor and in the Viewfinder (Cont’d)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Contents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>VTR mode indication</td>
<td>STBY : In record standby mode (record-pause mode) REC : During recording PLAY : During playback FF : During fast forward Rew : During rewinding STL : During still picture playback mode FWD : During playback in forward direction (FWD1: About +2 speed, FWD2: About +5 speed, FWD3: About +10 speed) REV : During playback in reverse direction (REV1: About +2 speed, REV2: About +5 speed, REV3: About +10 speed) STOP : Stop mode (SLOW protect mode) EJECT : Cassette being ejected - - - : No tape loaded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Indication of date and time</td>
<td>Indicates the date and time. Whether or not the date and time should be displayed as well as the display style are set on the TIME/DATA menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>LCD BRIGHT indication</td>
<td>When the brightness of the monitor screen is adjusted with the LCD BRIGHT button, the date and time indications and the VTR mode indication are turned off and the LCD BRIGHT indicator is displayed. Example: BRIGHT: +5 (BRIGHT +5 ••••••+•••••) Numeric value: Any of –5, –4, –3, –2, –1, 0, +1, +2, +3, +4, +5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Indication of Black operation</td>
<td>B : Displayed when the black stretch or black compress settings are other than NORMAL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Indication of skin tone detail color operation</td>
<td>SD : indicated when skin tone detail is ON.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Indication of the level operation</td>
<td>1 : Displayed when the AE LEVEL setting is other than NORMAL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Indication of FAV operation</td>
<td>FAV : Indicated when Full Auto White Balance is ON.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Gain operation indication</td>
<td>*DB : Indicates gain value when gain is either modes other than 0 dB and ALC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Indication of various function operations</td>
<td>SKIN AREA : Blinks while the skin detail color area is displayed. ALC : Displayed when ALC function alone is ON. FAS : Displayed when the Full Auto Shooting function is ON. S : Displayed when the shutter speed is a setting other than the default setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Indication of DR-HD100 Operation</td>
<td>When a DR-HD100 (HDD unit by FOCUS enhancements) is connected, its operation status is displayed. 25: DR-HD100 is connected (display white) 26: Recording with DR-HD100 (displays red) (For details, refer to the DR-HD100 INSTRUCTION MANUAL.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**STATUS 1**

In addition to the information on the STATUS 0 screen, this screen displays the following items.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Contents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>VIDEO FORMAT display</td>
<td>Displays the currently selected video format. Allows you to select the REC item on the VIDEO FORMAT[1/2] menu screen. See page 74. You can switch this display ON/OFF using the VIDEO FORMAT item on the LCD/VF[3/4] menu screen. See page 88.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Time Code (TC)/User’s Bits (UB) indication</td>
<td>Indicates the time code (h:m:s:frame) or user’s bits data. (Example) Time code TC 00:00:00:00 When inserting a brand-new tape, the remaining tape time is not indicated. When this device is used at low temperatures, it may take a while before the indication of the remaining tape time appears.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Remaining tape indication</td>
<td>Remaining tape indication (displayed in 1-minute steps). This indicator blinks when remaining tape time is equivalent to less than 3 minutes. Whether or not to display this item is set with the TC/UB item on the LCD/VF[3/4] menu screen. See page 88. * When inserting a brand-new tape, the remaining tape time is not indicated. When the tape has been run, the indication will appear. * The remaining tape indication is to be regarded only as a guide. * When this device is used at low temperatures, it may take a while before the indication of the remaining tape time appears.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Voltage indication</td>
<td>Indicates remaining battery level in 0.1V steps. Battery voltage and remaining battery are displayed. Select the display method in BATTERY INFO. on the LCD/VF[3/4] menu screen. See page 88.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CONTROLS, INDICATORS AND CONNECTORS**

* The range for the shutter speed differs depending on the video format setting. See “FILE MANAGE Menu Screen” on pages 96-98.
* See “Warnings and Responses” on page 102.
* Displayed if functions were assigned to the USER1 - 3 buttons. See page 83.
* Displayed when the [WHT BAL] white balance selector switch on page 15 is set to PRST (PRESET).
### Indications on the LCD Monitor and in the Viewfinder (Cont’d)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Contents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Audio sampling frequency indication</td>
<td>32 K : Indicated when the AUDIO MODE item on the AUDIO/MIC[1/2] menu screen is set to 32 K. (Audio is recorded with 12-bit, 32 kHz sampling.) 48 K : Indicated when the AUDIO MODE item on the AUDIO/MIC[1/2] menu screen is set to 48 K. (Audio is recorded with 16-bit, 48 kHz sampling.) When HDV format is set, 48K is displayed. X See page 94. Whether or not to display this item is set with the AUDIO item on the LCD/VF[3/4] menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Audio level meter indication</td>
<td>Displays the CH-1, CH-2 audio level meters. Whether or not to display this item is set with the AUDIO item on the LCD/VF[3/4] menu. X See page 98.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Standard audio level indication</td>
<td>The level at which audio is recorded on the tape is indicated by “.” –20 dB, –12 dB X See “AUDIO REF.LEVEL” on page 94.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Iris indicator display</td>
<td>M : Iris set higher than normal B : Iris set to normal N : Iris set lower than normal The indication can be switched ON/OFF with the F.NO/IRIS IND. item on the LCD/VF[1/4] menu screen. X See page 96.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Iris F-value indication</td>
<td>Indicates the F-number of the connected lens. OPEN, F2, F2.8, F4, F5.6, F8, F11, F16, CLOSE It is not displayed when the lens is removed. For some lenses, no display appears. The indication can be switched ON/OFF with the F.NO/IRIS IND. item on the LCD/VF[1/4] menu screen. X See page 96.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Filter position indication</td>
<td>Indicates the current filter position. No display : FILTER OFF ND1 : FILTER ND1 (1/4ND) ND2 : FILTER ND2 (1/16ND) The indication can be switched ON/OFF with the FILTER item on the LCD/VF[1/4] menu screen. X See page 96.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Audio Lock Indication</td>
<td>Displayed when the audio signal is locked to the video signal.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### STATUS 2

This screen displays the camera setup statuses.

**Indication** | **Contents**
---|---
FILE | CAM1 [********], CAM2-4 [********], and EXT1 - 4 [********] * indicates SUB NAME X See pages 96-98.
A | F symbol is displayed when a menu setting read from LOAD FILE was changed. The display disappears when the setting is saved using STORE FILE.
GAIN | 0dB, 3dB, 6dB, 9dB, 12dB, 15dB, 18dB, ALC
SHUTTER | OFF, 1/6, 1/6.25, 1/7.5, 1/12, 1/12.5, 1/15, 1/24, 1/25, 1/30, 1/48, 1/50, 1/60, 1/100, 1/120, 1/250, 1/500, 1/1000, 1/2000, 1/4000, 1/8000 (When STEP is selected) 1/24.01 - 1/10489.5 (Displayed when FAS or ALC mode is selected) The range for the shutter speed differs depending on the video format. X See page 93.
WHT. BAL | A[##00K], B[##00K], PRESET[##00K], FAW, MANUAL (Only when the remote control unit is used) For A and B, ## represents 23, 25, 28, 30, 32, 34, 37, 43, 52, 65, or 80. For PRESET, 32 or 56.
AE LEVEL | –3, –2, –1, NORMAL, +1, +2, +3
FILTER | OFF, ND1 (1/4ND), ND2 (1/16ND)
REMAIN | Displays the remaining tape (minutes) AUDIO | Displays the audio sampling frequency and the audio level adjustment mode (Ex: 32K (CH1) & 48K (CH2) X for AUTO mode) X (for MANUAL mode) When SHUTTER DISP. on the LCD/VF[3/4] menu screen is set to DEG, the shutter display for the frame rate in 24p or 25p mode is degrees.

### STATUS 3

Displays a list of setting statuses for USER1, 2, and 3 as well as LENS RET item on the SWITCH MODE menu screen. X See page 93.

**Indication** | **Contents**
---|---
USER1 | NONE, BARS, PRESET TEMP, B. STRETCH 1 to 5, B. COMPRESS 1 to 5, AE LEVEL, AE, RET, LOAD FILE
USER2 | NONE, BARS, PRESET TEMP, B. STRETCH 1 to 5, B. COMPRESS 1 to 5, RET, LOAD FILE
USER3 | NONE, BARS, PRESET TEMP, B. STRETCH 1 to 5, B. COMPRESS 1 to 5, RET, LOAD FILE
LENS RET | RET, FOCUS ASSIST

**STATUS 4**

This screen only displays VTR mode indication, date and time, event display and alarm indications.

* Whether or not date and time should be displayed and the display style are set on the TIME/DATE menu screen.

X See "Displaying the Time and Date on the Screen" on page 42.
### Indications on the LCD Monitor and in the Viewfinder (Cont’d)

#### Status Screen in VTR MODE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Contents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>VIDEO FORMAT display</td>
<td>Displays the video format recorded on the tape when in VTR mode. Also displays the video format of the HD/SD input signal. You can switch this display ON/OFF using the VIDEO FORMAT item on the LCD/VF[1/2] menu screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Time code (TC) and user’s bits (UB) display</td>
<td>Displays the time code data being recorded (hour, minute, second, frame) when in VTR mode. You can switch this display ON/OFF using the TC/UB item on the LCD/VF[1/2] menu screen. You can select to display either the time code or the user’s bits using the TC DISPLAY switch in the LCD door.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Remaining tape time</td>
<td>Remaining tape indication (displayed in 1-minute steps) This indicator blinks when remaining tape time is equivalent to less than 3 minutes. Whether or not to display this item is set with the TAPE REMAIN item on the LCD/VF[1/2] menu screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>When inserting a brand-new tape, the remaining tape time is not indicated.</em>&lt;br&gt;When the tape has been run, the indication will appear.&lt;br&gt;The remaining tape indication is to be used only as a guide.&lt;br&gt;When this device is used at low temperatures, it may take a while before the indication of the remaining tape time appears.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Event display</td>
<td>Displays messages related to VTR operations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Audio sampling frequency indication</td>
<td>The audio sampling frequency used for the recording is displayed during playback. (32 K, 48 K, 44.1 K) Whether or not to display this item is set with the AUDIO item on the LCD/VF[1/2] menu screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Audio level meter indication</td>
<td>Displays the audio level meters during playback. Whether or not to display this item is set with the AUDIO item on the LCD/VF[1/2] menu screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>VTR mode indicator</td>
<td>Indicates the VTR operation status. STOP, STOP, PLAY, REC, FF, REW, PLAY, STOP, REV, STO, --- (No tape loaded), SLOW: During variable playback in forward direction (Displayed when using non-linear editing software.) (SLOWY-1: About =0.1 speed, SLOWY-2: About =0.2 speed, SLOWY-3: About =0.5 speed) During variable playback in reverse direction (Displayed when using non-linear editing software.) (SLOW-1: About =0.1 speed, SLOW-2: About =0.2 speed, SLOW-3: About =0.5 speed)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Magnified Status Indications on the LCD Monitor

The characters on the status screens can be showed alone in magnified size on the LCD monitor.

1. Set the LCD+VF item on the LCD/VF[4/4] menu screen to ON. | X See page 89. |

2. When the DISPLAY button is briefly pressed while the LCD monitor is displayed, the displayed contents change every time the DISPLAY button is pressed.

   - Only image displayed  
   - Characters shown enlarged  

   - Image and characters displayed  

---

**MEMO**

When characters indicating the status are displayed in magnified size on the LCD monitor, the viewfinder displays the image.
Indications on the LCD Monitor and in the Viewfinder (Cont’d)

Auto White Balance Indication (Camera mode only)

The AUTO WHITE indication and the result of the operation are displayed during the auto white balance adjustment operation. See "White Balance Adjustment" on page 51.

Menu Setting Screen

Screen used for making various settings. The Menu Setting Screen appears when the STATUS button is pressed for 1 second or more. See "Setting Menu Screens" on page 72.

Safety Zone Indication (Camera mode only)

The indication of the following safety zone and center mark indications can be turned ON/OFF with the SAFETY ZONE item and CENTER MARK item on the LCD/VF menu screen. See page 88.

In addition, the safety zone display is on or off depending on the REC item setting and the ASPECT item setting in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen, as shown below:

Switching between the LCD Screen and Viewfinder Display

- When the LCD+VF item in the LCD/VF menu is set to OFF, the LCD monitor and viewfinder (VF) displays are as shown below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LCD Monitor Status</th>
<th>LCD Display</th>
<th>VF Display</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LCD Closed</td>
<td>Normal LCD</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inverted LCD</td>
<td>ON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCD Open</td>
<td>Normal LCD</td>
<td>ON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inverted LCD</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MEMO

- You can switch the LCD monitor and the viewfinder by holding the DISPLAY button for about 2 seconds.
- After you set up the function that switches the display between the LCD monitor and the viewfinder by holding down the DISPLAY button, the display mode is cancelled by the LCD monitor open/closed and normal/inverted operations.
- If the LCD monitor is closed inside this device with the screen in the normal display orientation, holding down the DISPLAY button does not work.

- When the LCD+VF item in the LCD/VF menu is set to ON, the LCD monitor and viewfinder (VF) displays are as shown below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LCD Monitor Status</th>
<th>LCD Display</th>
<th>VF Display</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LCD Closed</td>
<td>Normal LCD</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inverted LCD</td>
<td>ON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCD Open</td>
<td>Normal LCD</td>
<td>ON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inverted LCD</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MEMO

- Press the DISPLAY button for 2 seconds to switch the LCD screen display ON and OFF.
- The viewfinder screen is always displayed.
PREPARATIONS

Basic System

*1 An HZ-FM13 cannot be used with a Th16 × 5.5BRMU or S14 × 7.3B12/U zoom lens.
Use a FUJINON focus manual unit (FMM-8, CFH-3, CFC-12-990).
For details, please consult your JVC authorized dealer.

Attaching the Zoom Lens

1. Loosen the mount ring.
2. Attach the lens with its pin aligned with the hole in the mount.
3. Tighten the mount ring.
4. Connect the cable connector.
5. Clamp the lens cable.

CAUTION
• Be sure to tighten the mount ring completely. Incomplete tightening may result in the lens dropping off or disturbed back focus.
• Set this device’s power switch to “OFF” before the zoom lens is attached or detached.

Attaching the Microphone

(Provided)
Connect the provided microphone to the microphone holder.
Provided microphone is a phantom microphone.

1. Turn the knob on the microphone holder anticlockwise to loosen it and open the microphone holder.
2. Place the microphone in the microphone holder.
3. Turn the knob on the microphone holder clockwise to secure the microphone.
4. Connect the microphone cable to the INPUT1 or INPUT2 input connector on this device.
5. Attach the microphone cable to the clamp.
6. Make sure to perform the correct setting for use of a phantom microphone.
   X See page 55.
How to Attach the Viewfinder (Cont’d)

About the Viewfinder Cable
Attach the viewfinder cable to the clamp on page 14.
To reduce the emission of unwanted radio waves, be sure to attach the provided core filter as shown in the figure below:
- Attach the core filter (black) as close to this device as possible, as shown in the figure.

Inserting an SD Memory Card
By using an SD memory card, you can save and call up menu settings and camera settings for this device.
CAUTION
Be sure not to touch the metal connector area of the SD memory card.

Inserting an SD Memory Card
1. Open the SD memory card cover.
2. Face the cutout end of the SD memory card inward and insert it in the direction of the arrow.
CAUTION
Be sure not to touch the metal connector area of the SD memory card.

3. Close the SD memory card cover.

Taking out the SD memory card
1. Push the SD memory card in the direction of the arrow.
   - The SD memory card comes out slightly.
2. Pull the SD memory card straight out.

About SD Memory Cards
- When you use an SD memory card that is either new or was formatted on a device other than this device, format it on this device.
- Recommended SD memory cards:
  Panasonic: 16 MB to 2 GB
  You can write-protect the card so that saved files are not mistakenly erased. Set the switch on the side of the SD memory card to the "LOCK" position.

MEMO
SDHC-compliant memory cards cannot be used with this device.

Attaching the Tripod Base (Optional)
Use the optional tripod base to place the camera on a tripod.

1. Attach the tripod base on the tripod by using the hole that balances this device most optimally.

CAUTION
- The front base mount may be locked while the pin of the tripod base is not inserted into the hole on the rear base mount of this device. Therefore, after mounting, make sure that these parts are engaged properly.
- When moving this device mounted on a tripod, any impact or vibration should be avoided as this may cause this device to become detached and to drop from the tripod.
Be sure to remove this device from the tripod before transporting it.

2. While pushing the safety lever, pull the lock lever toward the front until the front mount clip clicks into place.

3. Place the device on the tripod base by aligning the rear base mount of this device with the pin on the tripod base.

4. Hold the camera on the top and slide forward so that the base mount of the camera is locked by the front mount clip of this device as it clicks into place.
AC Operation

This device is operable with AC power supply or battery pack. Use the AC adapter as the AC power supply.

1. After making sure that the power switches of this device and of the AC adapter are set to OFF, connect the DC cable to the DC OUTPUT connector of the AC adapter and the DC INPUT connector of this device as shown in the illustration.
   - To lessen the amount of unnecessary radio waves emitted, attach a provided Clamp filter near both ends of the DC cable as shown in the diagram.

2. Press the POWER switch of this device to ON. Power is supplied to the VTR section and the camera.

CAUTION

- Do not remove or connect the DC cable while recording is being performed.
- Do not use any power source with large fluctuations in power source voltage, power sources generating noise, such as ripples or power sources with lower voltage.

Charging the Built-in Battery

The built-in, rechargeable backup battery retains the date and time and the time code data.

The built-in battery is constantly being charge whenever this device is connected to a power supply, but it gradually discharges while this device is disconnected from a power supply. The battery will be fully discharged when this device is not used for about three months, in which case the set date and time and time code data are reset.

In this case, recharge the built-in battery and then set the date and time and time code data again. However, it is possible to use this device even if the built-in battery is discharged but the date and time and time code data cannot be recorded.

How to charge the built-in battery

1. Connect the AC adapter to this device and an AC outlet or mount a charged battery on this device.
2. Set the POWER switch on this device to "ON" or "OFF" (charging takes place with the POWER switch set to either of the positions).
3. Leave the equipment in this condition for about 4 hours.
   - The built-in battery will remain charged for about 3 months after being charged for about 4 hours.

Battery Operation

The attachable battery varies depending on location.

Recommended batteries

U model: Dionic 90 (Anton Bauer)
E model: Endura-7 (IDX)

CAUTION

Use only the recommended batteries.

If a heavy battery is used, the battery may fall out depending on the way the HD camera recorder is used.

GY-HD200U

Use an Anton Bauer battery.

Attaching the Battery

1. Align the battery guide pins (three places) with the battery adapter guide holes and insert straight. Battery will not be properly attached if guide pins are not straight.
2. Slide the battery towards the Cassette cover side panel until it clicks.
   - The battery is attached.

Removing the Battery

Slide the battery up while holding down the lock release button to remove the battery.

GY-HD200E/GY-HD201E

Use an IDX (Endura) battery.

Attaching the Battery

1. Face the battery terminals down and align the battery V-mount with the battery adapter V-mount attachment.
2. Slide the battery down until it clicks and locks.
   - The battery is attached.

Removing the Battery

Slide the battery up while holding down the lock release button to remove the battery.
PREPARATIONS FOR OPERATION

Battery Operation

(Cont’d)

Precautions for the Battery Operation

- Do not detach the battery pack while recording is taking place.
- Do not connect or disconnect the DC cable while operating with a battery pack.
- The following symptoms may occur if the DC cable is connected or disconnected while operating with a battery pack.
  - The power is cut off for a moment when the DC cable is disconnected.
  - Noise to the video and audio signals occurs. Audio signals are muted.
- When operation is continued with DC input after the battery pack capacity has been used up, set the POWER switch to OFF after the DC power is applied. Then switch ON again.
- If this device is left with the battery pack attached, a small amount of power is consumed even if the POWER switch on this device is set to OFF. Remove the battery pack when this device is not going to be used.

Remaining Battery Power Display

When the remaining battery power is nearly exhausted, the following warnings will be generated.
- Viewfinder screen or LCD monitor: When a Status screen is displayed (excluding the STATUS 2, 3 screen in the Camera mode)
- Alarm indication: LOW VOLTAGE displayed.
- FRONT and BACK TALLY lamp on camera: Blinks
- Monitoring loudspeaker and PHONES jack: Alarm sound

MEMO
- After the remaining battery power warnings appear, this device automatically stops operation if the battery power operation is continued.

Operating Time with Battery Pack

When a fully charged battery pack is attached, the approximate continuous operating time is as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Battery Pack</th>
<th>Continuous Operating Time (at 25°C (77°F))</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mono BP (U model)</td>
<td>Approx. 3.0 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endura BP (E model)</td>
<td>Approx. 2.5 hours</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Battery operating time may differ depending on the age of the battery pack, charging conditions and the operating environment, etc. Use the values in the table on the above for approximate reference times.
- Operating time is reduced in areas with a cold environment.
- Operating time is reduced when the power zoom lens and LCD are used frequently.

Precautions for the Battery Pack

- When the battery pack is not in use, it must be stored in a cool, dry place. Do not leave the battery pack in a place where it might be subject to a high temperature (under direct sunlight in a car, etc.), this could cause leakage of the fluid or shorten service life.
- When the terminal section of the battery pack gets dirty, the operating time will be shortened.
- If the operating time becomes greatly reduced immediately after recharging, the service life of the battery pack may be shortened.
- Purchase a new battery pack.

Recharging

- Recharge the battery pack after completely discharging it. Repeated recharging with residual charge remaining could result in reduced battery capacity.
- If the battery capacity is reduced by repeating incomplete recharging, or recharging without discharging, once discharge the battery pack completely, then recharge it to restore the battery capacity.
- If the battery pack is recharged with its internal temperature raised immediately after use, recharging may not be performed completely.
- Perform charging in an environment where the temperature is between 10°C (50°F) and 30°C (86°F), 20°C (68°F) to 25°C (77°F) is the ideal temperature range for charging. If the environment is too cold, charging may not complete.

Turning the Power ON

1. Set the POWER switch to ON.

- The operation differs according to whether this device is in Camera mode or in the VTR mode.
- The mode switches each time you press the CAM/VTR button.
- When the mode is switched, the VTR indicator displays the following statuses.
  - While the mode is being switched : Flashing
  - In VTR mode : Lit
  - In Camera mode : Off

VTR mode

This device enters the VTR mode. The camera image is displayed in the viewfinder or on the LCD monitor. When a recordable videocassette is loaded, this device enters the record-standby mode automatically. "STBY" is displayed in the VTR operation mode indication area of the LCD monitor and/or in the viewfinder. In this condition, press the REC/VTR trigger button to start recording.

Playback operation becomes possible when the STOP button is pressed to set the VTR operation mode indicator to indicate "STOP".

Turning the Power OFF

1. Place this device in the record-standby or STOP mode.
2. Set the POWER switch to OFF.
3. Remove the battery pack or the power supply to the DC INPUT connector. (When the camera is not going to be used for a longer period.)

CAUTION

- Do not set the POWER switch to OFF while recording is taking place.
- Confirm that the "STBY" or "STOP" indication is shown in the VTR operation mode indication area before the power is turned off. Should the POWER switch accidentally be set to OFF during a recording, wait at least 5 seconds before turning the power on again.
- Always set the POWER switch to OFF before disconnecting the power supply.
- Do not remove the battery pack or turn AC adapter OFF while the POWER switch on the camera is still set to ON.
Unloading the Cassette

1. Turn the POWER switch to ON.
2. When this device is in shooting standby mode or stop mode, slide the EJECT switch to the side and wait until the videocassette cover opens completely.
   • The LED next to the EJECT switch flashes. A few seconds pass before the videocassette tape is ejected.
3. The LED turns off and the videocassette tape opens.
4. Carefully push the center of the videocassette cover in the direction of the arrow as far as it will go to close it.

CAUTION
• When you close the videocassette cover, push it firmly as far as it will go. If the videocassette cover is not closed properly, it becomes half-locked and this device cannot function. If this happens, firmly push the videocassette cover in again as far as it will go to lock it.
• The videocassette cover does not open during recording even if you slide the EJECT switch.
• Do not leave the videocassette cover open for a long time. Dust or dirt may enter the inside and cause damage.
• Do not touch the videocassette cover or interfere with the eject operation while ejecting is in progress. This will cause damage.
• When you close the videocassette cover, do not press the black area of the inner cover.

Setting and Displaying the Date and Time

The date and time of the built-in clock should be set. Powered by the built-in backup battery the set date and time data continue to count even when the power is switched off.
• The set date and time data are displayed on the LCD monitor or in the viewfinder and recorded on the tape in accordance with the settings made on the menu screen.

Setting the Date and Time Style

The date and time are set on the menu screen. When setting while observing on a monitor connected to the connector, set the ANALOG OUT CHAR. item on the OTHERS[1/2] menu screen to ON.
1. Set the POWER switch to ON.
2. Press the STATUS button for 1 second or longer to display the TOP MENU screen.

3. Rotate the SHUTTER dial to align the cursor (K) with the item to be set, and then press the SHUTTER dial.
   • The setting area of the selected item starts blinking.
   • Rotate the SHUTTER dial to change the setting, and then press the SHUTTER dial. The setting area stops blinking and the setting is entered.

4. Rotate the SHUTTER dial to align the cursor (K) with the TC/UB/CLOCK item, and then press the SHUTTER dial in the direction of the camera body.
   • The TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen appears.
   • The TIME/DATE item is displayed on the LCD monitor and in the viewfinder.

   5. Make settings on the TIME/DATE menu screen. (This screen includes display style, etc.)

   TIME/DATE menu screen

   • The TIME/DATE menu screen appears.

   TC/UB/CLOCK (menu screen)

   • The TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen appears.

   • The TIME/DATE item is displayed on the menu screen.

   TIME/DATE item

   • The TIME/DATE item is displayed on the menu screen.

   TIME/DATE item

   • The TIME/DATE item is displayed on the menu screen.

   TIME/DATE item

   • The TIME/DATE item is displayed on the menu screen.

   TIME/DATE item

   • The TIME/DATE item is displayed on the menu screen.

   TIME/DATE item

   • The TIME/DATE item is displayed on the menu screen.

   TIME/DATE item

   • The TIME/DATE item is displayed on the menu screen.

   TIME/DATE item

   • The TIME/DATE item is displayed on the menu screen.

   TIME/DATE item

   • The TIME/DATE item is displayed on the menu screen.

   TIME/DATE item

   • The TIME/DATE item is displayed on the menu screen.

   TIME/DATE item

   • The TIME/DATE item is displayed on the menu screen.

   TIME/DATE item

   • The TIME/DATE item is displayed on the menu screen.

   TIME/DATE item

   • The TIME/DATE item is displayed on the menu screen.

   TIME/DATE item

   • The TIME/DATE item is displayed on the menu screen.

   TIME/DATE item

   • The TIME/DATE item is displayed on the menu screen.

   TIME/DATE item

   • The TIME/DATE item is displayed on the menu screen.

   TIME/DATE item

   • The TIME/DATE item is displayed on the menu screen.

   TIME/DATE item

   • The TIME/DATE item is displayed on the menu screen.

   TIME/DATE item

   • The TIME/DATE item is displayed on the menu screen.

   TIME/DATE item

   • The TIME/DATE item is displayed on the menu screen.

   TIME/DATE item

   • The TIME/DATE item is displayed on the menu screen.

   TIME/DATE item

   • The TIME/DATE item is displayed on the menu screen.

   TIME/DATE item

   • The TIME/DATE item is displayed on the menu screen.
Setting the Date and Time

1. Display the CLOCK ADJUST menu screen. Select the CLOCK ADJUST item on the TIME/DATE menu screen.

2. Set the date and time.
   The blinking digit is the one to be set.

   - Display the CLOCK ADJUST menu screen.
   - When the SHUTTER dial is pressed, the blinking digit moves to the next digit.
   - When the SHUTTER dial is rotated, the value of the blinking digit changes. When the SHUTTER dial is rotated upward, the value becomes higher. When rotated downward, the value becomes smaller.
   - Repeat the procedure described in 1 and 2 above to set the day, month, year, hours, minutes.
   - When the SHUTTER dial is in sync with a time signal to enter the date and time precisely.
   - When all the settings are completed, rotate the SHUTTER dial to align the cursor with the PAGE BACK item, and then press the SHUTTER dial.
   - The TIME/DATE menu screen returns.
   - To return to the normal screen, use either of the following methods.
     - Press the STATUS button or
     - Return to the TOP MENU screen and then select the EXIT item on the TOP MENU screen before pressing the SHUTTER dial.

Displaying the Time on the Screen

1. Display the TIME/DATE menu screen.
2. Set the TIME/DATE menu screen.
   - DISPLAY item: Sets whether or not date and time should be displayed.
   - DISPLAY MODE: Sets the video output mode in which date and time should be displayed.
   - BARS: Displayed when outputting the color bar.
   - CAM: Displayed when outputting the color camera image.
   - BARS+CAM: Date and time are always displayed.
   - STYLE item: Sets the style in which the date and time are displayed.
   - DATE+TIME: Date and time are displayed.
   - DATE: Date only is displayed.
   - TIME: Time only is displayed.

3. Display of date and time in the various operation modes.
   - In Camera mode: The date and time of the internal clock are displayed.
   - In VTR playback mode: The tape recorded on the tape are displayed.
   - In VTR stop mode: The last read date and time values are displayed.
   - When an HDV/DV signal is input from the IEEE1394 connector: The date and time of the internal clock are displayed in HDV format.

4. Time code input entered the IEEE1394 connector (GY-HD200U/GY-HD201E only)

   Pressing the STOP button for 1 second in the EJECT or stop mode displays the DV input time code data or user’s bit data from the IEEE1394 connector on the STATUS screen.

   DTCG: The time code data from the IEEE1394 connector
   DUBG: The user’s bit data from the IEEE1394 connector

   To return to display of the original time code or user’s bit, press the STOP button. (Display of the normal time code or user’s bit is also restored by performing VTR operation.)

CAUTION

- A time code with a duration of more than 3 hours may not be displayed correctly by DV components for general consumer use, as some of these lack the capability to display longer time codes.
Presetting and Recording of Time Code

The time codes from the internal time code generator can be recorded at the time of recording scenes.

- The TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen differs depending on whether the FRAME RATE item on the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen is "60/30" or "50/25".

There are two ways to preset the time code:
- Set from the TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen.
- Set in the LCD screen without opening the menu screen.

This section explains how to set from the TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen.

*See page 46 for instructions of setting from the LCD screen.

Menu and switch settings to set the time code preset are the same as the settings below.

**Setting**

To preset the Time Code, make the following settings.

- **TC GENE. switch**
- **REC** : The data preset in the time code generator runs only during recording.
- **FREE** : The time code starts to run from the time it is preset in the time code generator.

**TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen (FRAME RATE: 60/30)**

Use the DROP FRAME item to select the framing mode for the time code generator.

- **DROP** : The time code generator’s running method is set to the drop frame mode. Use this setting when placing emphasis on the recording time.
- **NON DROP** : The time code generator’s running method is set to the non drop frame mode. Use this setting when placing emphasis on the number of frames.

**TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen (FRAME RATE: 50/25)**

Whether or not user’s bit data should be recorded can be selected with the UB REC item on the TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen.

- **REC** : The data preset in the time code generator runs only during recording.
- **FREE** : The time code starts to run from the time it is preset in the time code generator.

**Zero-resetting the Time Code or User’s Bit Data**

This is performed with the TC or UB PRESET item on the TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen. (Performed separately for the time code and the user’s bit data.)

1. Rotate the SHUTTER dial to the TC or UB PRESET item, and then press the SHUTTER dial.
2. Rotate the SHUTTER dial to select ZERO PRESET as the setting value, and then press the SHUTTER dial.

**Notes**

When a menu screen is not being displayed, you can zero reset the time code data by simultaneously holding down the USER2 button and the STOP button for about 1 second.

**Presetting user’s bit data**

The user’s bit data are preset with the UB PRESET item on the TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen.

2. Set the time code (hours, minutes, seconds, frames).
   - Rotate the SHUTTER dial to align the cursor (▲) with TC PRESET, and then press the SHUTTER dial.
   - The first digit of the time code blinks.
   - When the SHUTTER dial is pressed, the blinking digit changes.

3. When the SHUTTER dial is rotated, the value of the blinking digit changes.
   - When the SHUTTER dial is rotated upward, the value becomes higher. When rotated downward, the value becomes smaller.

4. Repeat the procedure described in 2 and 3 above to set the desired value for all digits.
   - After setting the frame digit, press the SHUTTER dial to make EXECUTE blink. The setting values are confirmed when the SHUTTER dial is pressed again.

5. To cancel the setting, select CANCEL and press the SHUTTER dial.

**Zero-resetting the Time Code or User’s Bit Data**

This is performed with the TC or UB PRESET item on the TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen. (Performed separately for the time code and the user’s bit data.)

1. Rotate the SHUTTER dial to the TC or UB PRESET item, and then press the SHUTTER dial.

CAUTION

It is not possible to set all the digits of the user’s bit data to "F". Reading of the data during playback will not be possible for an all-F setting.
Presetting the Time Code from the LCD Screen

The time code can be preset directly from the LCD screen without opening the TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen.

**CAUTION**

PRESET mode is not available in the following.
- TC GENE. switch is set to REGEN.
- TC DUPLI. item in the TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen is set to ON.
- Menu screen is displayed.
- RECORDING mode is active.
- Switching to CAM/VTR mode (When VTR indicator is blinking).

**Setting**

- TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen
  - Set framing of the time code generator in DROP FRAME. (When set to FRAME RATE 60/30)
  - Set to enable/disable user’s bit recording in UB REC. (When set to FRAME RATE 50/25)
- Set the TC GENE switch to REC or FREE.

**CAUTION**

See page 44 for details on the above settings.

**Operation**

This section describes presetting the time code.

1. In Standby or Stop mode, press the USER1 button for about 2 seconds while holding down the STATUS button.
   - The current time code generator data is displayed in enlarged display mode on the LCD screen. The hour digit starts blinking.

2. Press the USER2 button to reset all data.
   - Data becomes "00:00:00:00" and the hour digit starts blinking.

3. Set the time code (hour, minute, second and frame).
   - The blinking digit can be set.
   - Turn the SHUTTER dial to change the value of the blinking digit. Turn the SHUTTER dial up to increase the value and down to decrease the value.
   - Press the SHUTTER dial to change the blinking digit.
   - Repeat steps 1 and 2 and continue setting for each row.

4. Press the USER3 button to confirm the setting data.
   - The LCD screen returns to the original screen.

**Presetting User’s Bit**

You can specify the user’s bit with a number or character between 0 - F.

**CAUTION**

All digits of user’s bit cannot be set to F. If all digits are set to F and read, user’s bit is deemed as undefined during playback.

**Aborting Preset Operation**

While presetting, press the USER1 button while holding down the STATUS button.
- Preset operation stops and the LCD screen returns to the original screen.

**Recording Time Codes in Continuation of Time Codes Recorded on Tape**

This device also incorporates a time code reader. Therefore, when this device enters record mode from record-standby mode, it can read the time code data recorded on the tape and record time codes in continuation of the existing data. The recorded user’s bit data are identical to the user’s bit data recorded on tape. *However, approximately ±1-frame variations may occur in scene accuracy.*

To enable this function, set the time code related switches as follows before starting recording.

**Setting**

- Set the TC GENE. switch inside the LCD door to REGEN.
- Set TC DUPLI. item on the TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen to OFF.

**MEMO**

The time code framing mode automatically becomes the mode (drop frame or non drop frame) already recorded on the tape.

**About Time Code Mode**

- Camera mode
  - TC GENE. switch
    - FREE
    - REC
    - REGEN
  - TC PRESET mode
    - TC REGEN mode

- VTR mode/IEEE1394 input mode
  - TC/UB/CLOCK menu
    - TC DUPLI. item
      - FREE
      - REC
      - REGEN
  - TC GENE. switch
    - FREE
    - REC
    - REGEN
  - TC PRESET mode
    - TC DUGENE mode
  - ON
    - IEEE1394 TC SLAVE mode
    - IEEE1394 TC DUPLI. mode

IEEE1394 TC SLAVE mode is performed with special operations. See page 48.

**Playing Back Time Code**

This device features a time code reader. During playback, the time code or user’s bit data recorded on the tape is displayed on the LCD screen or viewfinder status screen.

**MEMO**

- During playback, if a portion of tape without recording time code runs through, the time code stops running. Playback continues.
- When a tape with a time code that is longer than two hours is played on home-use DV equipment, time code may not be played properly on some models.
PREPARATIONS FOR OPERATION

Synchronizing with the Time Code of the IEEE1394 (DV)-Connected Master Unit

You can synchronize the time code when performing multi-camera recording. The internal time code generator will be synchronized with the time code in the signal input from the IEEE1394 terminal. After synchronization (slave lock), the internal time code generator continues to run even if the IEEE1394 cable is disconnected.

Connections
Connect the master unit and the slave unit with an IEEE1394 cable.

Settings and Operations
  1. Set the IEEE1394 switch on the left side to [DV].
  2. Set to Camera mode.
  3. Set the recording format to DV-60I or DV-50I.
  4. Set the TC GENE. switch to [FREE].
  5. Set the IEEE1394 switch on the left side to [DV].
  6. Press the STOP button for 1 second.
  7. Set to VTR mode.
  8. Check that the time code that is synchronized with the master unit is running.
  9. Disconnect the IEEE1394 cable.
 10. The slave unit finally returns to Camera mode.

MEMO
- Slave lock cannot be performed in the following instances:
  - Slave unit is in CAMERAMODE.
  - Slave unit is in VTR mode and there is no DV signal.
- Slave lock operation is performed only when the slave unit is not set to FREE.
- Slave lock is performed in DV format and is then switched to HDV format, frame digit may deviate.
- If power is turned off, slave lock is disabled. Perform slave lock operation again.
- Slave lock cannot be performed for UB (User’s bit).
- If slave lock is not synchronized, it will not run properly. Synchronize DROP/NON DROP before using.

Screen Adjustment

LCD monitor direction, angle, screen brightness, etc. can be adjusted.

Adjusting the Direction and Angle of the LCD monitor
- With the LCD door in the open condition, rotate the LCD monitor.
- It can be turned 180° in upward direction and 90° downward direction.
- When turned 180° upward direction, the LCD monitor can be viewed from the lens side (vertically inverted image).

Dioptr Adjustment

Adjust the position and angle of the viewfinder.

Adjustments are made on the LCD/VF[4/4] menu screen.
- PEAKING: Adjusts the contour of the LCD monitor.
- LCD BRIGHT: Adjusts the brightness of the LCD monitor.

Adjustments are made on the LCD/VF[4/4] menu screen.
- PEAKING: Adjusts the contour of the LCD monitor.
- LCD BRIGHT: Adjusts the brightness of the LCD monitor.
- LCD CONTRAST: Adjusts the contrast of the LCD monitor.
- BLACK & WHITE: Sets the LCD monitor to black and white display.

Viewfinder Adjustment

Adjust the direction and angle of the viewfinder.

Adjustments are made on the LCD/VF[4/4] menu screen.
- PEAKING: Adjusts the contour of the LCD monitor.
- LCD BRIGHT: Adjusts the brightness of the LCD monitor.
- LCD CONTRAST: Adjusts the contrast of the LCD monitor.
- BLACK & WHITE: Sets the LCD monitor to black and white display.

MEMO
The screen size of the viewfinder can be changed by selecting the desired size with the ASPECT item on the VIDEO FORMAT[1/2] menu screen (4:3 or 16:9).
**Back Focus Adjustment**

It is only necessary to perform this when the lens is attached for the first time or when focusing is not correct in both the telephoto and wide-angle positions.

- It is easier to adjust back focus when the subject is more than 3 meters from the camera.
- The optimal subject for this adjustment is a Siemens star chart.

1. Set the IRIS mode switch to M (Manual).
2. Set the zoom mode to M (Manual).
3. Open the iris by turning the iris ring.
4. Turn the zoom lever until the lens is at the maximum telephoto position.
5. Bring the subject into focus.
6. Set the lens to maximum wide-angle.
7. Loosen the back focus ring retaining knob.
8. View the same subject and adjust the back focus ring for the best possible focus.
9. Repeat steps 4 through 8, about three times for fine adjustment until the subject remains in focus in both the telephoto position and the wide-angle position.
10. Tighten the back focus ring retaining knob to secure the ring.

**White Balance Adjustment**

Since the color of light (color temperature) varies depending on the light source, it is necessary to re-adjust the white balance when the main light source illuminating the subject changes.

### Adjustment procedure

1. Set the following switches.
   - Set the POWER switch to ON.
   - Set the IRIS mode switch of the lens to A (Auto).
   - Set the FULL AUTO switch to OFF.
2. Set the ND filter switch according to the current lighting.
3. Set the WHT.BAL switch to A or B.
4. Place a white object near the center of the screen under the same lighting conditions as the target subject and zoom in to fill the screen with white.
5. Press the AWB (Auto White Balance) button.
   - ‘AUTO WHITE A, B OPERATION’ is displayed in the viewfinder while the auto white balance adjustment circuit operates.
   - When corrected white balance is obtained, the approximate color temperature is displayed together with “AUTO WHITE A, B OK” for about 5 seconds.
6. If the adjustment ends abnormally, an error message, as described below, blinks for about 5 seconds.
   - NG: OBJECT (Improper object)
     - Displayed when there is not enough white color on an object or the color temperature is not suitable.
     - Replace the color temperature conversion filter or use another white object and re-adjust the white balance.
   - ERROR: LOW LIGHT (Insufficient illumination)
     - Displayed when the illumination is dim. Increase the illumination and then re-adjust the white balance.
   - ERROR: OVER LIGHT (Excessive illumination)
     - Displayed when the light is excessively bright. Decrease the illumination and then re-adjust the white balance.

### Error messages

- If the adjustment ends abnormally, an error message, as described below, blinks for about 5 seconds.
  - NG: OBJECT (Improper object)
  - Displayed when there is not enough white color on an object or the color temperature is not suitable.
  - Replace the color temperature conversion filter or use another white object and re-adjust the white balance.

### Full Auto White Balance (FAW)

The FAW function adjusts the white balance value automatically as the lighting condition changes.

- Do not adjust using any highly reflective objects, such as metal, etc., as this may result in improper white balance adjustment.
- The FAW (Full Auto White balance) function cannot provide optimum white balance with a subject outside the FAW adjustment range, for example when it contains only a single color or not enough white color.
- The accuracy of the FAW (Full Auto White balance) is inferior to that of the Auto white balance.
- When the power is turned on with the FAW mode selected, it takes about 10 seconds for the FAW adjustment to be completed.
  - Do not shoot within this interval.
PREPARATIONS FOR OPERATION

White Shading Adjustment

It is necessary to perform this adjustment to the camera when attaching a lens that is different from the previously attached lens. Even if white balance is achieved in the middle of the screen, it may not be achieved at the top and bottom of the screen. Greens and magentas may be colored. This is due to characteristics of the lens. Correcting this phenomenon is called White Shading Adjustment. Perform this adjustment after adjusting white balance. White shading adjustment is performed on the WHITE BALANCE menu screen.

Adjustment procedure

1. Display the WHITE BALANCE menu screen. Follow the steps in "Setting Menu Screens" on page 72 and proceed as follows.

2. Set the monitor CHROMA level to maximum.

3. Set the camera’s lens controls as follows:
   a. Set the IRIS opening to F4 or higher number.
   b. In the case of a zoom lens set the ZOOM at the center of its range.

4. Check the color of the monitor screen. If the top and bottom of the monitor screen are white then no adjustment is necessary. If the top of the monitor screen is greenish and the bottom is reddish or if the top is reddish and the bottom is greenish then continue with this adjustment.

5. Adjust the LEVEL G in the SHADING menu item to minimize the color difference between the top and bottom of the screen.

6. If the lens setup is incorrect, the white shading adjustment might result in over compensation. If performing this adjustment, set the lens to the recommended settings. Do not open the lens IRIS beyond F4; do not set a telephoto lens to its extreme wide position or telephoto position.

7. If the lens setup is incorrect, the white shading adjustment might result in over compensation. When performing this adjustment, set the lens to the recommended settings. Do not open the lens IRIS beyond F4; do not set a telephoto lens to its extreme wide position or telephoto position.

8. White shading occurs due to the optical characteristics of the mounted lens, it is not a camera malfunction.

Setting in the WHITE BALANCE screen is performed as follows.

- Selecting an item
  Turn the SHUTTER dial to align the cursor (►) with the desired item, and press the SHUTTER dial.
  • The item is selected and the setting value blinks.
- Changing the setting value
  Turn the SHUTTER dial to change the blinking value. When the SHUTTER dial is pressed, the value stops blinking and the setting is changed.

1. Perform the above steps to set SHADING to MANUAL.

2. Set the video format using the FRAME RATE item and the REC item on the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen.

3. When setting values are increased, colors at the bottom of the screen are suppressed and the top is enhanced.

4. LEVEL R: Adjusts reds.

5. LEVEL G: Adjusts greens.

6. LEVEL B: Adjusts blues.<Range: -128 to +127>

7. When setting values are decreased, colors at the top of the screen are suppressed and the bottom is enhanced.

8. Display the WHITE BALANCE menu screen.

9. If you change the FRAME RATE item setting, the system is rebooted.

10. The synchronous video signal is momentarily disturbed when the REC item setting is switched.

11. We recommend the following settings for REC item (in HDV format). When recording images with a lot of motion:

   • Set to HDV60p or HDV50p

   When recording images with little motion:

   • Set to HDV33p or HDV25p

12. It is recommended that only LEVEL G be adjusted.

13. "White shading occurs due to the optical characteristics of the mounted lens, it is not a camera malfunction."
SETTING AND ADJUSTMENTS BEFORE SHOOTING

Camera Settings

1. Set the switch positions.
   A. [GAIN] switch: Set to L (0 dB).
   B. [WHT. BAL] (Auto White Balance) switch: Set to A or B.
2. Set the lens’ iris mode switch to “A” (Auto iris side).
3. Select the ND filter.
4. Set the shutter speed to OFF with the SHUTTER dial.

Screen Size (4:3/16:9) Mode Selection

The screen size of recorded images can be selected with the ASPECT item on the VIDEO FORMAT[1/2] menu screen.

- To record using the standard screen, set ASPECT to 4:3.
- To record using the 16:9 screen, set ASPECT to 16:9.

ND FILTER Suitable Location

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OFF</th>
<th>Indoors, dark outdoors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1/4 ND</td>
<td>Outdoors under clear sky</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2/16 ND</td>
<td>Outdoors under extremely clear sky</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Audio Input Signal Selection

This device is provided with the INPUT1 connector and the INPUT2 connector for audio input.

Select the audio from the INPUT1 connector or the INPUT2 connector using the CH-2 INPUT switch for the audio to be recorded in CH-2.

Selecting the CH-2 channel input connector

Select using the CH-2 INPUT switch.

Selecting the audio signal input

Select the sound to be input to the INPUT1 or INPUT2 connector using the AUDIO SELECT switch.

Adjusting Audio during Recording

For each audio channel, use the CH-1/CH-2 AUDIO SELECT switch to select whether the audio level adjustment should be set to AUTO mode or MANUAL mode.

- Adjusting the audio input level control
  The audio input level can be adjusted manually when this device is in the record, record-standby or stop mode.
  1. Set the CH-1/CH-2 AUDIO SELECT switch of the channel whose audio level that you want to adjust manually to MANU.
SETTING AND ADJUSTMENTS BEFORE SHOOTING

Audio Input Signal Selection (Cont’d)

**MEMO**
- When AUDIO LIMITER in the AUDIO/MIC[1/2] menu screen is set to ON, the AUDIO LIMITER functions in manual adjust mode. Recording level is suppressed when excessive audio is input.
- The reference level for audio recorded on the tape can be set with the AUDIO REF. LEVEL item on the AUDIO/MIC menu screen. (–20 dB or –12 dB) The level will change for both CH-1 and CH-2.

**CAUTION**
- When the REC/VTR trigger button is pressed very quickly and repeatedly, or the POWER switch is moved immediately after the trigger button is pressed, this device may not enter the record mode.
- To remedy this condition set the POWER switch to OFF and wait for 5 seconds or more before turning the power on again.
- A neat transition to the next recorded scene cannot be guaranteed if a recording is ended by turning the POWER switch or DC power supply OFF, or by removing the battery pack.
- Trial-shooting is always recommended before recording important events to confirm the recording is satisfactory.
- The microphone may pick up the sound of the lens' iris if the iris is changed abruptly or the iris is manually moved abruptly during recording.

Monitoring Audio during Recording

The audio input during recording, in record-pause or stop mode can be monitored through the monitoring speaker or earphone.

- Select the audio channel to be monitored using the MONITOR SELECT switch.
  - **CH-1**: The sound input to the CH-1 channel is output.
  - **BOTH**: The sound input to the CH-1 and CH-2 channels is output mixed.
  - **CH-2**: The sound input to the CH-2 channel is output.
- The MONITOR volume control adjusts the monitoring volume.

**MEMO**
- When connecting a stereo earphone, make the following settings to output stereo sound.
- Set the MONITOR SELECT switch to BOTH.
- Set the AUDIO MONITOR item on the AUDIO/MIC[2/2] menu screen to STEREO.
- When AUDIO MONITOR item on the AUDIO/MIC[2/2] menu screen is set to “STEREO”, only the audio of CH-1 is output from the monitoring speaker.
- The volume of the alarm tone is set with the ALARM VR LEVEL item on the OTHERS[1/2] menu screen. (OFF/LOW/MIDDLE/HIGH)

SHOOTING OPERATION

Basic Recording Operation

1. Set the POWER switch to ON.
2. Start recording. Press the REC/VTR trigger button on this device to start recording.

**CAUTION**
- This device enters the stop mode automatically at TAPE END. If this mode continues for 3 minutes, the mode switches to the tape protect mode.
- If the REC/VTR trigger button is pressed very quickly and repeatedly, or the POWER switch is moved immediately after the trigger button is pressed, this device may not enter the record mode.

To remedy this condition set the POWER switch to OFF and wait for 5 seconds or more before turning the power on again.

A neat transition to the next recorded scene cannot be guaranteed if a recording is ended by turning the POWER switch or DC power supply OFF, or by removing the battery pack.

Trial-shooting is always recommended before recording important events to confirm the recording is satisfactory.

The microphone may pick up the sound of the lens' iris if the iris is changed abruptly or the iris is manually moved abruptly during recording.

**About the Quick REC START Mode**

If the REC/VTR trigger button is pressed immediately after the videocassette is inserted, the mode becomes the QUICK REC START mode that enables quick start of recording.

However, when shooting starts in the middle of the tape, a blank space appears as the new scene will not be linked smoothly with the previous image.

Also, the time code does not continue. (Some overlap may also occur.)

**About the Focus Assist Function**

When you press this button during shooting, the area of focus is displayed in blue, red or green, making it easy to focus accurately.


You can also set this function from the RET button.

See “SWITCH MODE Menu Screen” on page 83. (LENS RET item)

When FOCUS ASSIST on the LCD/VF[1/4] menu screen is set to ACCU-FOCUS, ACCU FOCUS functions with FOCUS ASSIST. This makes focusing with shallower depth of field easier. ACCU FOCUS automatically turns OFF after approximately 10 seconds. See page 86
SHOOTING OPERATION

Basic Recording Operation (Cont’d)

If the Record-Standby Mode Continues

Setting the time before the tape protection mode is engaged

This time before the tape protection mode is engaged from the record-standby mode can be set to 5 minutes or 3 minutes with the LONG PAUSE TIME item on the OTHERS[1/2] screen menu. #1 See page 93.

When the record-standby mode has continued for about 5 minutes or 3 minutes, this device automatically stops drum rotation in order to protect the tape. (Tape protect mode)

In the tape protect mode, STOP is shown as the VTR mode indication on the LCD monitor and in the viewfinder screen. (STATUS 1 screen)

• To start recording from the tape protect mode, press the REC/VTR trigger button.
• The drum starts rotating, and recording starts after about 3 seconds.
• To return to the record-standby mode from the tape protect mode, press the RET button.

CAUTION
This function does not work when using RET button is used as FOCUS ASSIST button.

Checking Recorded Contents in Record-Standby Mode (Recording Check Function)

This function is available only when this device is in the standby mode.

In standby mode, about 5 seconds of the last part of the content recorded in DV format can be played back, and about 7 seconds when the content was recorded in HDV format can be played back.

• The recorded contents can be checked on the LCD monitor, in the viewfinder or on a monitor connected to the video signal output connectors.

In the record-standby mode, press the RET button on the camera lens section.

HEADER REC Function

When the REC/VTR trigger button is pressed while the STOP button is pressed, this function first records the color bar video and the test tone (1 kHz sine-wave) of the built-in signal generator at the beginning of the tape. Then it records the black video signal and the mute audio signal for the duration specified in advance. When the recording is completed, this device enters the Record-Standby mode. The time code value at the Record-Standby position becomes the time code specified in advance. (HEADER REC function)

• Settings related to the HEADER REC function, such as whether the HEADER REC function should be enabled, the HEADER REC execution duration, and the time code value setting when the HEADER REC recording is completed, etc., are made on the HEADER REC menu screen.

• The HEADER REC function is executed under the following circumstances:
CAM/VTR button: Set to CAM mode.

In the Record-Standby or Stop mode

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tape beginning</th>
<th>REC/VTR trigger button</th>
<th>Record-Standby mode</th>
<th>Normal recording</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Color bar video signal</td>
<td>Test tone (1 kHz)</td>
<td>Black video signal</td>
<td>Mute audio (No sound)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time code, user’s bits recording</td>
<td>Time code, user’s bits recording</td>
<td>Time code, user’s bits recording</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• The HEADER REC menu screen contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Initial Setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>START KEY</td>
<td>Sets whether the HEADER REC operation should be executed when the REC/VTR trigger button is pressed while the STOP button is pressed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STOP+REC</td>
<td>HEADER REC operation is executed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TC DATA</td>
<td>Sets the time code value for the point when the Record-Standby mode is engaged following completion of HEADER REC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXECUTE</td>
<td>Confirms the set time code.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CANCEL</td>
<td>Cancels the set time code.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZERO PRESET</td>
<td>Resets all time codes to zero “0”.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UB DATA</td>
<td>Sets the user’s bits of the HEADER REC section.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXECUTE</td>
<td>Confirms the set user’s bits.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CANCEL</td>
<td>Cancels the set user’s bits.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USER DATA</td>
<td>The user’s bits for the normal recording section are set on the TCUB/CLOCK menu screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SBS TIME</td>
<td>Sets the duration (seconds) in which the color bar signal and test tone (1 kHz) is recorded during HEADER REC. (1-sec steps)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLACK TIME</td>
<td>Sets the duration (seconds) in which the black signal is recorded during HEADER REC. (1-sec steps)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAGE BACK</td>
<td>The TCUB/CLOCK menu screen returns when the SHUTTER dial is pressed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SHOOTING OPERATION

HEADER REC Function (Cont'd)

How to set the HEADER REC menu screen
1. Display the HEADER REC menu screen.
2. Set the menu item.
3. To terminate the setting, press the STATUS button.

Executing the HEADER REC Function
The START KEY item on the HEADER REC menu screen should be set to STOP+REC.
1. Load the cassette and engage the Record-Standby mode or the Stop mode.
2. While pressing the STOP button, press the REC/VT trigger button.
   - The tape automatically rewinds to the beginning, and HEADER REC operation starts from the beginning of the tape.
3. After HEADER REC recording is completed and the Record-Standby mode is engaged, normal recording starts when you press the REC/VT trigger button.
   - When the TC GENE. switch is set to either REC or REGEN, the time code value at the start of the HEADER REC menu screen.

MEMO
- To stop during HEADER REC operation, press the REC/VT trigger button or the STOP button.
- The HEADER REC menu screen cannot be opened during HEADER REC recording.
- The USER REC operation is accepted even during loading of the cassette tape.
- The test tone (1 kHz sine-wave) recorded in the color bar section will be recorded unrelated to the setting for the TEST TONE item on the AUDIO menu screen.
- The time code preset on the TCUB/CLOCK menu screen becomes invalid when HEADER REC recording is performed.
- The user’s bits following completion of HEADER REC recording will be the user’s bits value set on the TCUB/CLOCK menu screen.
- The running of the time code following completion of HEADER REC recording will be in accordance with the setting of the TC GENE. switch.

Playing the HEADER REC Function
• When the automatic tracking function is activated at the start of the playback mode, digital noise may appear in the playback image.
• This device does not allow manual tracking adjustment.
• When playing back a tape that was recorded on another unit, digital noise may appear during playback.
• Following loading of the tape, the built-in head cleaner will emit a sound while operating. This does not indicate a malfunction.
• The data recorded for the date and time or time code on the tape can be shown on the screen. To enable or disable the display is selected on the menu screen:

Display of date and time: TIME/DATETIME menu screen
Display of time code: LCDVF/12 menu screen

Search
- Press the FF button in the play mode or still mode to search the tape in the forward direction. Playback takes place while fast forwarding.
- Press the REW button executes search of the tape in the reverse direction. Playback takes place while rewinding.
- Each press on the button switches the speed to ×2, ×5, and ×10.)
- Press the PLAY/STILL button to resume normal playback.
- Press the STOP button to stop.

Fast-Forward, Rewind
- Press the FF button in the stop mode to fast forward.
- Press the REW button in the stop mode to rewind.
- “SWITCH TO VTR MODE” is displayed and the function does not work if the “FF” or “REW” buttons are pressed when Camera mode is in the stop mode.
- Press the STOP button to stop fast forwarding or rewinding.
- When the tape approaches the end during fast forwarding or rewinding, the tape speed decelerates to protect the tape.
- The time required for fast forwarding and rewinding may become longer when used in a cold environment. This is not a malfunction.
Outputting Audio

1. Display the AUDIO menu screen. Select the AUDIO item on the TOP MENU screen.
2. Set the AUDIO menu screen.
   - PB AUDIO CH [DV] Items
     CH1/2 : To reproduce the sound (CH-1, CH-2) recorded during shooting.
     MIX : To reproduce the sound recorded during shooting (CH-1, CH-2) and the after-recorded sound (on CH-3 and CH-4) simultaneously.
     CH3/4 : To reproduce the sound after-recorded on CH-3 and CH-4.

   "Earphone terminal output audio
   Audio output is as shown in the table below depending on the MONITOR SELECT switch and AUDIO MONITOR and PB AUDIO CH [DV] settings on the AUDIO menu screen.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MONITOR SELECT</th>
<th>PB AUDIO CH [DV]</th>
<th>AUDIO MONITOR</th>
<th>CH1/2</th>
<th>MIX</th>
<th>CH3/4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CH-1</td>
<td></td>
<td>L/R: CH1</td>
<td>L/R: CH1+CH3</td>
<td>L/R: CH3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOTH</td>
<td>MIX</td>
<td>L/R: CH1+CH2</td>
<td>L/R: CH1+CH3+CH3+CH4</td>
<td>L/R: CH3+CH4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH-2</td>
<td>STEREO</td>
<td>L/R: CH2</td>
<td>L/R: CH1+CH2+CH3+CH4</td>
<td>L/R: CH3+CH4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   For HDV format, audio is output to CH1 and CH2 no matter the settings.

3. Either of the following operations returns you to the normal screen.
   - Press the STATUS button
   - Return to the TOP MENU screen, select the EXIT item and press the SHUTTER dial.

   MEMO
   The DV format is capable of recording up to 4 channels when the 12-bit, 48 kHz sampling frequency is employed. This device records audio on the two channels CH-1 and CH-2. (4-channel recording is possible in the case of DV input.)
   When this device is used for playback of a tape that was recorded on another unit with audio recorded on the CH-3 and CH-4 channels, the PB AUDIO CH [DV] item on the AUDIO menu screen must be set. After-recording on the CH-3 and CH-4 channels is not possible.

   * In HDV format, you can only select the settings within the bold frame.

Connecting the Video Signal Cables

Connecting the IEEE1394 Cable

To reduce the emission of unwanted radio waves, be sure to attach the provided clamp filter as shown in the figure below.

- Attach the clamp filter as close to this device as possible, as shown in the figure.
- Set the IEEE1394 switch on the left panel of this device.
  - DV : DV format
  - HDV : HDV format

Displaying Alarms

- **CHANGE 1394 SWITCH**
  - Displayed when the setting for the input/output video format from the IEEE1394 connector and the setting for the IEEE1394 switch are different.
  - Set the IEEE1394 switch so it matches the video format.

  ![IEEE1394 Switch](image)

  * When connecting the IEEE1394 cable from/to Camcorder, VCR and other IEEE1394 device, make sure the following instructions, otherwise the IEEE1394 circuit device may be destroyed.
  - Turn the power of both devices OFF and connect the IEEE1394 cable.
  - Do not insert incorrectly (in reverse) the IEEE1394 cable end to IEEE1394 port of both devices.
  - Do not connect the IEEE1394 cable under the condition of static electricity.
  - Turn the power of both devices OFF when changing the IEEE1394 switch from/to HDV/DV.
### Dubbing with AV Devices

By connecting the video signal output terminal and the AUDIO OUTPUT terminal on this device to an AV device, analog signal dubbing is possible.

1. Connect the cables.
2. Turn both devices on.
3. Set this device to VTR mode.
4. Set the video output.
5. Set the audio output.
6. Insert the video cassettes.
7. Start recording on the recording unit.
8. When dubbing is completed, stop recording on the recording unit, and then press the STOP button on this device to stop playback.

#### IEEE 1394

**Composite cable or Component cable**

- **IEEE 1394 switch**
- **DV**
- **HDV**

#### VIDEO FORMAT menu screen

- **PB AUDIO CH [DV]**
- **PB TAPE**
- **AUTO**

#### CAUTION

- Set the IEEE1394 switch to HDV or DV.
- Start recording after making sure that both devices are properly connected.

---

### HDV/DV Dubbing

Connecting this device to another video component equipped with HDV/DV connector (IEEE1394 standard) using a IEEE1394 cable (optional) enables dubbing of digital signals with high picture quality and high-quality sound.

#### Using this device as the playback unit

##### (Dubbing to another video)

1. Set the IEEE1394 switch on the left panel of this device.
2. Connect the IEEE1394 cable.
3. Turn both devices on.
4. Set this device to VTR mode.
5. Set the PB TAPE item on the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen.
6. Insert a videocassette tape.
7. Press the PLAY/STILL button on this device to start playback.
8. Start recording on the recording device.
9. When dubbing is finished, stop recording on the recording device, press the STOP button on this device, and stop the playback.

#### MEMO

- Switch the IEEE1394 switch when this device is OFF.
- When you dub still images, they are low resolution images. Noise may also enter the audio.
- Operations may differ depending on the features and specifications of the connected device, and operations or data exchange may not be possible even if the devices are connected.
- If noise appears on the screen or the audio cuts out, reconnect the IEEE1394 cable or turn this device on again.
- If you turn the power to the device connected to the IEEE1394 connector on and off or switch the video input, noise may occur in the audio. If you perform this type of operation, set the speaker volume as low as possible on the audio device connected to this device.
- Recording may not be possible in some cases even if the recorder is equipped with a IEEE1394 connector.
**Backup Recording**

**Backup Recording of this Device’s Camera Image and Sound Through the IEEE1394 Connector**

This device’s camera image and sound can be recorded for backup on another component that is equipped with IEEE1394 connector.

**Connections**

Use this device as the master unit. Connect the master unit and the backup unit with a IEEE1394 cable.

1. **Set the IEEE1394 switch on both devices to either HDV or DV.**
   - Start recording after making sure that both devices are properly connected.
   - If the RET button is pressed during backup recording, output from the IEEE1394 terminal is stopped, the image is switched to the image recorded on this device, interrupting the backup recording image.

**Settings**

- **Master unit** (this device)
  1. Set the IEEE1394 switch on left side of this device.
  - **DV** : When backup in DV format
  - **HDV** : When backup in HDV format
  2. Place in Camera mode.
  3. Set the 1394 REC TRIG. item on the OTHERS[2/2] menu screen. \# See page 94.

**Operations**

- **Backup unit**
  - Place in HDV/DV signal input mode.
  - Depending on the used component, it may be necessary to set "REMOTE SELECT."
  - When BR-HD50 is used, set the Backup Recording function to OFF.
  - Also, set REM SEL HDV/DV in the REMOTE[1/2] menu of the BR-HD50 to ON or LOCR-REM.
  - Insert the tape and set to STOP or REC PAUSE status.

**Memo**

- If the master unit tape is paused or stopped when the master unit time code running mode is in REC RUN mode, the time code for the slave unit stops.
- When using BR-HD50 as a backup device and switching this device from the playback mode to the record mode, noise will be noticed on the monitor output screen of BR-HD50 (backup will be correctly recorded).

---

**When Using the GY-HD200U/GY-HD201E as Recording Unit**

**Dubbing From Another Videocassette**

1. Set the IEEE1394 switch on left side of the GY-HD200U/GY-HD201E.
   - **DV** : When dubbing in DV format
   - **HDV** : When dubbing in HDV format
2. Connect the units with the IEEE1394 cable.
3. Turn ON both units.
4. Place the GY-HD200U/GY-HD201E in the VTR MODE.
5. Set the frame rate.
   - Insert the tape and set to STOP or REC PAUSE status.
6. Set the 1394 REC TRIG. item (60/30, 50/25, 24) on the VIDEO FORMAT[1/2] menu to match the HDV/DV signal frame rate input from the IEEE1394 connector.
7. Insert the videocassettes.
   - **GY-HD200U** : Insert the videocassette to be dubbed GY-HD201E
   - **Playback unit** : Insert the recorded videocassette.
8. Start playback on the playback unit.
   - For details, see the instructions to the unit used for playback.
   - The playback picture from the playback unit appears on the GY-HD200U/GY-HD201E’s LCD monitor and viewfinder screen.
9. Press the REC/VTR trigger button on the GY-HD200U/GY-HD201E to start recording.
   - To temporarilly pause the recording, press the REC or VTR trigger button.
   - To restart the recording, press the REC or VTR trigger button again.
10. When dubbing is completed.
    - Press the REC/VTR trigger button or the STOP button on the IEEE1394 connector to stop recording, and then stop playback on the playback unit.

**Memo**

- Set the IEEE1394 switch on left side of the GY-HD200U/GY-HD201E.
- **DV** : When backup in DV format
- **HDV** : When backup in HDV format
- Place in Camera mode.
- Set the 1394 REC TRIG. item on the OTHERS[2/2] menu screen. \# See page 94.
- For HDV mode, set the BACK SPACE [HDV] item. \# See page 94.
Connect a Remote Control Unit (RM-LP55/RM-LP57)

Set camera switch functions with the remote control unit (RM-LP55/RM-LP57).

**Connection**
Connect the remote control unit cable to the REMOTE terminal.

- Attach the clamp filter included with the remote control unit to the remote cable. (The clamp filter can be substituted with the clamp filter included with this device.) Consult your JVC dealer if you do not have a clamp filter.

**CAUTION**
- Turn the power OFF when connecting.

**Operation**
1. Turn the device ON.
2. Turn ON the OPERATE switch on remote control unit to activate the remote control unit. See page 69 for details on functions that can be operated with the remote control unit.

**Notes on Using the Remote Control Unit**
- When the switch function of this device and the remote control unit are the same, the remote control switch function is prioritized.
- FOCUS and ZOOM cannot be adjusted with the remote control unit.
- Shutter speed slightly differs from the value displayed on this device.
- Shutter Speed in 24p Mode
  - When this device is in 24p mode, shutter speed cannot be set to 1/60 (U model) or 1/50 (E model) with the remote control unit.
  - Even if shutter speed is set to 1/60 or 1/50 with the remote control unit when in 24p mode, the shutter speed for the device is 1/48.
- AUTO WHITE Function
  - When the device is in VTR mode, during playback or HEADER REC, the AUTO WHITE function does not work even if the auto white operation is performed with the RM-LP55 and RM-LP57.
  - In the case of the RM-LP55, “LOW LIGHT ERROR” is displayed on the LCD screen of the RM-LP55.

**IEEE 1394**

CH2-AUDIO OUT-CH1    VIDEO
RM-LP55
REMOTE

**Wind once**

**Clamp filter**

**Remote Control Unit Functions List**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>RM-LP55</th>
<th>RM-LP57</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BARS</td>
<td>[OFF/ON]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONTOUR</td>
<td>[OFF/ON]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONTOUR V/H LEVEL</td>
<td>[OFF/ON]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRIS [MANU/AUTO]</td>
<td>[OFF/ON]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRIS LEVEL</td>
<td>[OFF/ON]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRIS DETECT</td>
<td>[OFF/ON]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PNDT xlal</td>
<td>[AUTO1]</td>
<td>[AUTO2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FAN</td>
<td>[OFF/ON]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>presets</td>
<td>[G]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MANU</td>
<td>[OFF/ON]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUTO WHITE</td>
<td>[OFF/ON]</td>
<td>[OFF/ON]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MANUAL WHITE BALANCE R/B LEVEL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAINT R/B LEVEL</td>
<td>[OFF/ON]</td>
<td>[OFF/ON]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gain</td>
<td>[0dB]</td>
<td>[6dB]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[9dB]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[12dB]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[LOLUX]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[−3dB]</td>
<td>[−6dB]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[−9dB]</td>
<td>[−12dB]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALC/EEI</td>
<td>[OFF/ON]</td>
<td>[OFF/ON]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALC</td>
<td>[OFF/ON]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEGA</td>
<td>[OFF/ON]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHUTTER</td>
<td>[OFF/ON]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[1/100]</td>
<td>[1/120]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[1/120]</td>
<td>[1/250]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[1/250]</td>
<td>[1/500]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[1/500]</td>
<td>[1/1000]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[1/1000]</td>
<td>[1/2000]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[1/2000]</td>
<td>[1/4000]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[1/4000]</td>
<td>[1/10000]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[1/10000]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.SCAN</td>
<td>[X]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZOOM</td>
<td>[X]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FOCUS</td>
<td>[X]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HI-MEMO [OFF/ON]</td>
<td>[X]</td>
<td>[X]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MASTER BLACK LEVEL</td>
<td>[OFF/ON]</td>
<td>[OFF/ON]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAMMA [OFF/ON]</td>
<td>[X]</td>
<td>[X]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAMMA MASTER LEVEL</td>
<td>[X]</td>
<td>[X]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KNEE MASTER LEVEL</td>
<td>[X]</td>
<td>[X]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TITLE [OFF/ON]</td>
<td>[X]</td>
<td>[X]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TITLE POSITION</td>
<td>[X]</td>
<td>[X]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TITLE CLEAR</td>
<td>[X]</td>
<td>[X]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HI-PHASE</td>
<td>[X]</td>
<td>[X]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SC [COARSE] [0°/90°/180°/270°]</td>
<td>[X]</td>
<td>[X]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- [X] Same as RM-LP55
- [O] Available
- None

- [1] Only when frame rate is 60p, 60i, 30p, or 24p
- [2] Only when frame rate is 50p, 50i, or 25p
The Menu Screen consists of multiple layers of menu screens as shown below. The menu screen to be set is selected from the TOP MENU in accordance with the function or purpose.

The items on the menu screens differ with the Camera mode and the VTR mode. The contents of set items are stored in this device's memory and are retained even when the power is turned off.

Camera Mode

VTR Mode/IEEE1394 Input Mode
(IEEE1394 signal input is possible with the GY-HD200U, GY-HD201E.)
### Setting Menu Screens

Make the settings while observing the LCD monitor or the viewfinder screen. The analog OUT CHAR item on the OTHERS[1/2] menu screen is set to ON, the menu screen can be also be viewed on a monitor connected to the video signal output connector.

1. Set the POWER switch to ON.
2. Set the mode of this device with the CAM/VTR button.
3. Press the STATUS button for 1 second or longer.
   - The TOP MENU screen appears.

4. Select the menu screen to be set. Rotate the SHUTTER dial to align the cursor (K) with the menu screen to be set, and then press the SHUTTER dial.
   - The selected menu screen appears.

5. Select the menu item on the menu screen. Rotate the SHUTTER dial to align the cursor (K) with the item to be set, and then press the SHUTTER dial.
   - The setting area of the selected item starts blinking, and the setting can now be made.

6. Change the setting. Rotate the SHUTTER dial to change the setting, and then press the SHUTTER dial.
   - The setting area stops blinking and the setting is entered.
   - To change multiple items, repeat the procedures in steps 4, 5, and 6, above.

7. Return to the TOP MENU screen. Rotate the SHUTTER dial to align the cursor (K) with the PAGE BACK item, and then press the SHUTTER dial.
   - To change settings on other menu screens, repeat the procedures in steps 4, 5, and 6, above.
   - To save the set contents in a file, select the FILE MANAGE menu screen and perform the operations for saving to file.
   - See "FILE MANAGE Menu Screen" on page 96.

8. To return to the normal screen after completing the settings, use either of the following methods.
   - Press the STATUS button
   - Return to the TOP MENU screen and align the cursor (K) with the EXIT item, and then press the SHUTTER dial.

**MEMO**
- While the menu screen is being displayed, the USER1, USER2 and USER3 buttons can also perform menu operations.
  - USER1 button: Raises the cursor (K)/Changes the setting
  - USER2 button: Lowers the cursor (K)/Changes the setting
  - USER3 button: Confirms the menu item/Confirms the setting
- The menu screen is not displayed when switching between Camera and VTR mode (VTR indicator flashes).

### TOP MENU Screen

Different menu screens are displayed depending on whether this device is in the Camera mode or in the VTR mode. In the VTR mode, the CAMERA OPERATION, CAMERA PROCESS and SWITCH MODE menu screens are not displayed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VIDEO FORMAT</td>
<td>Displays the menu screen for setting the video format for shooting and playing back video.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camera mode: It consists of two screens. VTR mode: It consists of one screen.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The cursor (K) does not move to this item when this device is recording.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAMERA PROCESS</td>
<td>Displays a menu screen related to audio.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camera mode: It consists of two screens. VTR mode: It consists of one screen.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• In VTR mode, the screen changes to the AUDIO menu screen.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• This item is only displayed when VTR is activated.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TC/UB/CLOCK</td>
<td>Displays a menu screen for adjusting the time code.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The ways that the date and time are recorded together with the display style are set here.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The TIME/DATE menu screen and CLOCK ADJUST screen can be displayed through the TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The cursor (K) does not move to this item when this device is recording.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OTHERS</td>
<td>Displays a menu screen for setting other functions and to display the hour meter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It consists of two screens.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The cursor (K) does not move to this item when this device is recording.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FILE MANAGE</td>
<td>Displays the FILE MANAGE menu screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saves the menu screen settings as a file on this device or an SD memory card, or reads the menu screen settings saved in the file. It is also possible to reset the menu settings to default settings or initialize (format) an SD memory card.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• See &quot;FILE MANAGE Menu Screen&quot; on page 96.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXIT</td>
<td>The normal screen returns when the SHUTTER dial is pressed while the cursor is aligned with this item.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
MENU SCREENS

VIDEO FORMAT[1/2] Menu Screen

The VIDEO FORMAT menu screen consists of two screens (1/2 screen, 2/2 screen).

In VTR mode, this screen consists of one screen.

* This is not displayed in VTR mode.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frame Rate</th>
<th>Setting Description</th>
<th>U model</th>
<th>E model</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>60/30</td>
<td>Shoots at 480/60i, 720/60p, 720/30p.</td>
<td>480/60i, 720/60p.</td>
<td>720/60p, 576/50i, 720/25p.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CANCEL</td>
<td>EXECUTE</td>
<td>EXECUTE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MEMO

- If you change the FRAME RATE item setting, the system is rebooted.
- See page 53.
- The cursor ( ) does not move to this item when this device is in VTR mode or is ejecting a tape.

1080I CAMERA

Selects whether or not to output camera images in HDV1080i signals. HDV1080i signals are output from component output of the Y/PB/PR terminal. However, they are not recorded on this device.

- OFF: No HDV1080i signal is output. Output setting of camera images is based on the REC settings below.
- ON: HDV1080i signal is output. (60/30 Frame rate: 1080/60i, 50/25 Frame rate: 1080/50i)

- 480/60i or 576/50i signals are output from the VIDEO OUT terminal. (Composite signal)
- ON/OFF is set when the SHUTTER dial is pressed.

MEMO

- Tape recording and IEEE1394 output are not available when this is ON.
- REC item cannot be set when this is ON.
- The cursor is positioned on 1080I CAMERAS in the VIDEO FORMAT[1/2] menu screen when this is ON.
- When the FRAME RATE is set to 24, this is fixed to OFF.

REC

Sets the video format for shooting. (Can only be displayed and set in camera mode)

You can set the following according to the FRAME RATE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>FRAME RATE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DV-60i</td>
<td>DV format (U model Only)</td>
<td>60/30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DV-HD60P</td>
<td>HDV format (U model Only)</td>
<td>60/30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDV-HD60P</td>
<td>HDV format</td>
<td>60/30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDV-HD30P</td>
<td>HDV format</td>
<td>50/25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDV-HD50P</td>
<td>HDV format</td>
<td>50/25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDV-HD24P</td>
<td>HDV format</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DV-50i</td>
<td>DV format (E model Only)</td>
<td>50/25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DV-50P</td>
<td>DV format (E model Only)</td>
<td>50/25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DV-24P</td>
<td>DV format (E model Only)</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DV-HD50P</td>
<td>HDV format (E model Only)</td>
<td>50/25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DV-HD24P</td>
<td>HDV format (E model Only)</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CANCEL</td>
<td>CANCEL settings.</td>
<td>EXECUTE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MEMO

- The synchronous video signal is momentarily disturbed when the ASCR item setting is switched.
- On the E model, the video format is fixed at HDV-HD24P when the FRAME RATE item is set to “24”. [HDV-HD24P] is displayed.
### VIDEO FORMAT[2/2] Menu Screen

**Item** | **Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)**  
---|---  
**PB TAPE** | Selects whether to automatically detect the playback tape video format or play back only a particular format. Normally, use the “AUTO” setting.  
**AUTO** | During tape playback, the format signal is switched automatically and played back.  
**DV** | During tape playback, only the part of the tape recorded in DV format is played back.  
**DVCAM** | During tape playback, only the part of the tape recorded in DVCAM format is played back.  
**MEMO**  
If you play back a tape containing both DV and HDV formats, the video signal is disturbed when the signal is switched.  

**SET UP** | Selects whether to add a setup signal to the composite signal from the VIDEO OUT terminal. In DV format, a setup signal can be added to COMPONENT output.  
**0.0%** | No setup signal is added.  
**7.5%** | A setup signal is added.  
**Initial settings: U model: 7.5%  E model: 0.0%**  
**MEMO**  
When the FRAME RATE item is set to 50/25, this item is not displayed.  

**PAGE BACK** | When the cursor is in this position, press the SET/RETER dial to the VIDEO FORMAT[1/2] menu screen.

---

### CAMERA OPERATION Menu Screen

The CAMERA OPERATION menu screen is only displayed in the Camera mode.

**Item** | **Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)**  
---|---  
**AE LEVEL** | For adjusting the image level when using auto iris, “ALC” or “EEI”.  
** Increase value** | Increases level.  
** Decrease value** | Decreases level.  
**Settings:** –3, –2, NORMAL (0), 2, 3  
**ALC MAX** | Sets the maximum “ALC” value to automatically change the signal intensity level depending on the brightness.  
**3200K** | Sets the basic color temperature to 3200K. (Use for light sources with a low color temperature, such as halogen lamps.)  
**5600K** | Sets the basic color temperature to 5600K. (Use for light sources with a higher color temperature, such as sunlight.)  
**PRESET TEMP**  
**MEMO**  
This item does not function when the FAW item on the SWITCH MODE menu screen is set to “PRESET”.  

**SMOOTH TRANS** | Smoothens the transition when the [GAIN] switch on page 15, or [WHT.BAL] switch on page 15 is switched over and achieves gradual change in place of sudden changes. However, the smooth transition function does not function when switching the [GAIN] switch set in ALC, FULL AUTO ON.  
**OFF** | Deactivates the smooth transition function.  
**ON** | Activates the smooth transition function.  
**BARS** | Sets whether or not color bars are output. (This is fixed at “OFF” when in FULL AUTO mode)  
**OFF** | Color bars are not output.  
**ON** | Color bars are output.  

**PAGE BACK** | The TOP MENU returns when the SHUTTER dial is pressed with the cursor at this position.

---

1) REMOTE appears as the setting value of this item when the remote control unit is connected.
The CAMERA PROCESS menu screen consists of two screens. (1/2 screen, 2/2 screen)

The CAMERA PROCESS menu screen is only displayed in camera mode.

### Item Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BLACK*1</td>
<td>Changes the gain in dark areas. Change this depending on the video signal being shot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NORMAL</td>
<td>Normal status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STRETCH</td>
<td>Enhances the dark areas of the video so the contrast between light and dark is more visible by stretching the signal only in the dark areas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMPRESS</td>
<td>If the video that was shot is bright overall and lacking in contrast, the gain in the dark areas is compressed, which adds contrast.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMPRESSION LEVEL</td>
<td>Selects compression level below.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STRETCH LEVEL</td>
<td>The amount of stretching increases from LEVEL1 = LEVEL2 = LEVEL3 = LEVEL4 = LEVEL5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>そうで</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMPRESS LEVEL</td>
<td>The amount of compression increases from LEVEL1 = LEVEL2 = LEVEL3 = LEVEL4 = LEVEL5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHITE CLIP</td>
<td>Sets the white clipping point on input video signals with a high luminance level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DETAIL*2</td>
<td>Adjusts the black level (darkness) of the video so the contrast between light and dark is more visible by stretching the signal only in the dark areas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LEVEL</td>
<td>The white clipping point is set at a luminance level of 100%. If the screen is too white at 100%, set it to 100%.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V/H BALANCE*2</td>
<td>Sets which contours (details) to sharpen, those in the horizontal (H) direction or those in the vertical (V) direction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DETAIL*2</td>
<td>Adjusts the contour compensation frequency for the contours (details).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DETAIL*2</td>
<td>Compensates for distortion when outputting progressive video to an interlaced monitor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DETAIL*2</td>
<td>Changes the vertical contour compensation frequency for the contours (details).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DETAIL*2</td>
<td>This can only be selected when the SKIN DETECT item is set to ON.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DETAIL*2</td>
<td>Sets the contour compensation level (amount of softening) for the skin detail function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DETAIL*2</td>
<td>This can only be selected when the SKIN DETECT item is set to ON.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DETAIL*2</td>
<td>Selects whether to run the &quot;knee&quot; function, which compresses video signals over a certain level to render the tonality in the highlight areas, automatically or manually. Set &quot;MANUAL&quot; when you want to check the bright areas, and adjust the knee point manually.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DETAIL*2</td>
<td>Skins the skin detail function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DETAIL*2</td>
<td>Adjusts the knee point automatically, according to the luminance level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DETAIL*2</td>
<td>You can change the luminance level in the &quot;LEVEL&quot; item.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DETAIL*2</td>
<td>Sets whether or not to set the noise reduction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DETAIL*2</td>
<td>When camcorder's picture is noisy, because of low light conditions, you can improve picture's S/N by turning DNR on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DETAIL*2</td>
<td>When DNR is set to OFF, the camcorder's S/N ratio becomes better but the &quot;blurring of moving objects&quot; will increase.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DETAIL*2</td>
<td>Calls up the ADVANCED PROCESS menu screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DETAIL*2</td>
<td>REMOTE appears as the setting value of this item when the remote control unit is connected.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. When the REC item on the VIDEO FORMAT[1/2] menu screen, move the cursor to this position and press the SHUTTER dial.
2. REMOTE appears as the setting value of this item when the remote control unit is connected.
ADVANCED PROCESS
Menu Screen

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CINEMA</td>
<td>OFF : Turns the function OFF.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ON : Sets the gamma characteristics and color matrix close to the characteristics of a movie screen. (The monitor image is movie-quality. This setting is not intended for film input.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MEMO When this item is set to &quot;ON&quot;, &quot;CINE&quot; is displayed for COLOR MATRIX and GAMMA items and cannot be selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COLOR MATRIX</td>
<td>Sets the color matrix.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OFF : Turns the function OFF.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>STANDARD : Sets a normal color matrix.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CINEMA : Sets a color matrix close to the characteristics of a movie screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MEMO When the item is set to &quot;OFF&quot;, &quot;-----&quot; is displayed for the LEVEL item and it cannot be selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAMMA</td>
<td>Adjusts the gamma curve to determine how black is rendered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OFF : No gamma curve correction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>STANDARD : Sets a normal gamma curve.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CINEMA : Sets to appear movie-like when viewing on a TV screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FILM OUT : Sets to a setting for recording onto film.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MEMO When the cursor is in this position and you press the SHUTTER dial once, the screen switches to the WHITE BALANCE menu screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LEVEL</td>
<td>When &quot;STANDARD&quot;, &quot;CINEMA&quot;, or &quot;FILM OUT&quot; is set for the GAMMA item, a gamma curve can be set individually.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Increase the number : Enhances the tonality of the black. However, the tonality in the bright areas deteriorates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Decrease the number : Enhances the tonality in the bright areas. However, the tonality in the black areas deteriorates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Settings: MIN (–5), –4 - NORMAL (0) - 4, MAX (5))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COLOR GAIN</td>
<td>Adjusts the video signal color level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OFF : Sets the video to black and white.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Increase the number : Makes the colors more dense.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Decrease the number : Makes the colors less dense.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Settings: OFF, MIN (–10), –9 - NORMAL (0) - 9, MAX (10))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHITE BALANCE</td>
<td>When the cursor is in this position and you press the SHUTTER dial once, the screen switches to the WHITE BALANCE menu screen.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

COLOR MATRIX ADJUST
Menu Screen

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>R GAIN</td>
<td>For manually adjusting the shading of the R axis of the color matrix (red and cyan).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Increase the number : Enhances red and cyan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Decrease the number : Reduces red and cyan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Settings: MIN (–5), –4 - NORMAL (0) - 4, MAX (5))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R ROTATION</td>
<td>For manually adjusting the color phase of the R axis of the color matrix (red and cyan).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Increase the number : Increases yellowishness of red color and bluishness of cyan color.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Decrease the number : Increases bluishness of red color and greenishness of cyan color.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Settings: MIN (–5), –4 - NORMAL (0) - 4, MAX (5))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G GAIN</td>
<td>For manually adjusting the shading of the G axis of the color matrix (green and magenta).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAND (0) - 4, MAX (5))</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G ROTATION</td>
<td>For manually adjusting the color phase of the G axis of the color matrix (green and magenta).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Increase the number : Increases bluishness of green color and greenishness of magenta color.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Decrease the number : Increases yellowishness of green color and bluishness of magenta color.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Settings: MIN (–5), –4 - NORMAL (0) - 4, MAX (5))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B GAIN</td>
<td>For manually adjusting the shading of the B axis of the color matrix (blue and yellow).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STANDARD CINEMA FILM OUT : Sets to a setting for recording onto film.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Increase the number : Enhances green and magenta.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Decrease the number : Reduces green and magenta.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Settings: MIN (–5), –4 - NORMAL (0) - 4, MAX (5))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B ROTATION</td>
<td>For manually adjusting the color phase of the B axis of the color matrix (blue and yellow).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Increase the number : Increases reddishness of blue color and greenishness of yellow color.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Decrease the number : Increases greenishness of blue color and reddishness of yellow color.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Settings: MIN (–5), –4 - NORMAL (0) - 4, MAX (5))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAGE BACK</td>
<td>Press the SHUTTER dial to return to the ADVANCED PROCESS screen when cursor is at this position.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SKIN COLOR ADJUST
Menu Screen

When you enter the SKIN COLOR ADJUST screen, the areas where the skin detail function is applied are displayed in color, and other areas are displayed in black and white.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SKIN COLOR DET</td>
<td>Sets the color used by the skin detail function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STOP</td>
<td>Loads the color used by the skin detail function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXECUTE</td>
<td>Loads the color used by the skin detail function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEMO</td>
<td>When the COLOR GAIN item is “OFF” on the ADVANCED PROCESS menu screen, only the areas where the skin detail function is running are displayed using skin colors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAGE BACK</td>
<td>Press the SHUTTER dial to return to the ADVANCED PROCESS screen when cursor is at this position.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**WHITE BALANCE Menu Screen**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WHITE PAINT+*1</td>
<td>Adjusts the R (red) component when in AWB (Auto White Balance) mode. Increase the number: Strengthens the red. Decrease the number: Weakens the red. (Settings: MIN (~32), ~31 - NORMAL (0) - 30, MAX (31))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHITE PAINT-B*1</td>
<td>Adjusts the B (blue) component when in AWB (Auto White Balance) mode. Increase the number: Strengthens the blue. Decrease the number: Weakens the blue. (Settings: MIN (~32), ~31 - NORMAL (0) - 30, MAX (31))</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SHADING**

- Adjusts white shading.
- **PRESET**: No white shading adjustment.
- **MANUAL**: Enables white shading adjustment.
  - See "White Shading Adjustment" on page 52.

**LEVEL R**

- When the SHADING item is set to MANUAL, adjusts the red of white shading. Increase the number: Red at the bottom of the screen is suppressed and the top is enhanced. Decrease the number: Red at the top of the screen is suppressed and the bottom is enhanced. (Settings: MIN, -127 to 1, NORMAL, 1 to 126, MAX)

**LEVEL G**

- When the SHADING item is set to MANUAL, adjusts the greens of white shading. Increase the number: Green at the bottom of the screen is suppressed and the top is enhanced. Decrease the number: Green at the top of the screen is suppressed and the bottom is enhanced. (Settings: MIN, -127 to 1, NORMAL, 1 to 126, MAX)

**LEVEL B**

- When the SHADING item is set to MANUAL, adjusts the blues of white shading. Increase the number: Blue at the bottom of the screen is suppressed and the top is enhanced. Decrease the number: Blue at the top of the screen is suppressed and the bottom is enhanced. (Settings: MIN, -127 to 1, NORMAL, 1 to 126, MAX)

**PAGE BACK**

- When the cursor is in this position, press the SHUTTER dial to return to ADVANCED PROCESS menu screen.

*REMOTE* appears as the setting value of this item when the remote control unit is connected.

---

**SWITCH MODE Menu Screen**

The SWITCH MODE menu screen is only displayed in camera mode.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SHUTTER</td>
<td>Sets the fixed value (STEP) for values that can change using the SHUTTER dial on the right panel or the VARIABLE used when shooting computer monitors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>STEP</strong></td>
<td>Switches the shutter speed using fixed values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VARIABLE</strong></td>
<td>Set when shooting a computer monitor, etc. You can set the following using the REC item on the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen. (This is fixed at 3SEC in FULL AUTO mode.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**REC Item**

- **Setting for STEP**
- **Setting for VARIABLE**

**FAW**

Sets the positions to assign the FAW (Full Auto White Balance) function to the [WHT.BAL] white balance selector switch on page 15. (Fixed at FAW when in FULL AUTO mode)

**GAIN L**

Sets the gain value for each position on the [GAIN] sensitivity selector switch on page 15. (Fixed at ALC in FULL AUTO mode)

**GAIN M**

Sets the gain value for each position on the [GAIN] sensitivity selector switch on page 15. (Fixed at ALC in FULL AUTO mode)

**GAIN H**

Initial values: L: 0dB, M: 0dB, H: 16dB

**USER1**

You can assign one of the following menu functions to the [USER1/2/3] buttons on page 14 to each button.

**USER2**

Set according to the shooting conditions. This is only valid in CAMERA mode. This does not function in VTR mode.

**USER3**

Set according to the shooting conditions. This is only valid in CAMERA mode. This does not function in VTR mode.

---

**PAGE BACK**

- When the cursor is in this position, press the SHUTTER dial to return to the TOP MENU screen.
The AUDIO/MIC menu screen consists of two screens (1/2 screen, 2/2 screen). In VTR mode, the screen changes to the AUDIO menu screen.

* This is not displayed in VTR mode.

### AUDIO/MIC[1/2] Menu Screen

**TEST TONE**
- Sets whether to output a test audio signal (1 kHz, –20dBFS or –12dBFS) during color bar output.
  - **OFF**: A test audio signal is not output.
  - **ON**: A test audio signal is output.

**MIC WIND CUT**
- Selects whether to cut the lows (low frequency bands) from the audio input signal.
  - **OFF**: Low frequencies are not cut.
  - **INPUT1**: Only cuts the low frequencies in the audio from the INPUT1 connector.
  - **INPUT2**: Only cuts the low frequencies in the audio from the INPUT2 connector.
  - **BOTH**: Cuts the low frequencies in the audio from both the INPUT1 and INPUT2 terminals.

**AUDIO REF. LEVEL**
- Sets the reference audio level on the tape. (Both CH-1 and CH-2)
  - **–20dB**: Records with –20 dB as the reference audio level.
  - **–12dB**: Records with –12 dB as the reference audio level.

**INPUT1 MIC REF.**
- Sets the reference audio input level for the INPUT1 connector. (When the [AUDIO INPUT] switch on page 16 is set to MIC or MIC+48)
  - **–50dB**: Sets the reference audio input level at –50 dB.
  - **–60dB**: Sets the reference audio input level at –60 dB.

**INPUT2 MIC REF.**
- Sets the reference audio input level for the INPUT2 connector. (When the [AUDIO INPUT] switch on page 16 is set to MIC or MIC+48)
  - **–50dB**: Sets the reference audio input level at –50 dB.
  - **–60dB**: Sets the reference audio input level at –60 dB.

**AUDIO MODE**
- Selects the audio sampling frequency for recording. (Both CH-1 and CH-2)
  - **32K**: Digitally records with a 12-bit, 32 kHz sampling frequency.
  - **48K**: Digitally records with a 16-bit, 48 kHz sampling frequency.

**AUDIO LIMITER**
- Sets whether or not AUDIO LIMITER functions when the [CH-1/CH-2 AUDIO SELECT] switch on page 13 is set to MANU.
  - **OFF**: AUDIO LIMITER is turned off.
  - **ON**: AUDIO LIMITER is turned on. Recording level is suppressed when excessive audio is input.

### AUDIO/MIC[2/2] Menu Screen

**AUDIO MONITOR**
- Selects whether stereo or mixed audio is output from the PHONES jack when the MONITOR SELECT switch is set to BOTH.
  - **STEREO**: Stereo audio (CH-1 audio is output to L and CH-2 audio is output to R).
  - **MIX**: Mixed audio (CH-1 and CH-2 mixed audio is output to L and R).

**FAS AUDIO**
- Sets the recording level adjusting method for FAS (Full Auto Shooting). (CH-1, CH-2)
  - **AUTO**: Sets to AUTO.
  - **SW SET**: Follows settings for the AUDIO SELECT switch.
  - **X**: See [“[FULL AUTO] switch” on page 19].

**SEARCH AUDIO [DV]**
- Selects whether to output audio when searching a tape recorded in DV format. (This also includes slow playback.)
  - **ON**: Audio is output.
  - **OFF**: Audio is not output.

**PB AUDIO CH [DV]**
- Selects which channel audio to output when playing back a DV tape with the audio signal recorded in 4 channels. (Can only be set in VTR mode)
  - **CH1/2**: Outputs the CH-1 and CH-2 channel audio.
  - **MIX**: Outputs all 4 channels of audio at the same time.
  - **CH3/4**: Outputs the CH-3 and CH-4 channel audio.

**MEMO**
- This device does not have a function for dubbing to the CH-3 and CH-4 channels.

### PAGE BACK
- When the cursor is in this position, press the SHUTTER dial to return to the AUDIO/MIC[1/2] menu screen.
### LCD/VF[1/4] Menu Screen


In VTR mode, this screen consists of two screens. (1/2 screen, 2/2 screen)

#### Item Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ZEBRA</td>
<td>Switches the luminance level of the subject sections where the zebra pattern is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60-70%</td>
<td>Zebra pattern is displayed in sections with luminance levels between 60% and 70%.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70-80%</td>
<td>Zebra pattern is displayed in sections with luminance levels between 70% and 80%.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OVER85%</td>
<td>Zebra pattern is displayed in sections with luminance levels over 85%.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OVER95%</td>
<td>Zebra pattern is displayed in sections with luminance levels over 95%.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. NO/IRIS IND.</td>
<td>Selects whether or not the F-number of the lens iris/iris level mark is displayed in the status display on the LCD monitor or in the viewfinder. (STATUS 1 screen)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>F-number and iris level mark is not displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F . NO</td>
<td>F-number is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. NO + IND.</td>
<td>F-number and iris level mark is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FILTER</td>
<td>Selects whether or not the FILTER position of this device is displayed in the status display on the LCD monitor or in the viewfinder. (STATUS 1 screen)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>FILTER position is not displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ON</td>
<td>FILTER position is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAFETY ZONE*1</td>
<td>Selects whether or not the safety zone is shown on the LCD monitor or in the viewfinder together with the form of the safety zone indication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>Not displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>4:3 zone is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:9</td>
<td>16:9 zone is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:9+4:3</td>
<td>16:9 zone and 4:3 zone are displayed. (This cannot be selected when DV format is set.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.35:1 CE</td>
<td>Displays 2.35:1 zone in the middle of the screen. (Only in HDV format or 24P or 25P mode)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.35:1 CH</td>
<td>Displays 2.35:1 zone at the top of the screen. (Only in HDV format or 24P or 25P mode)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CENTER MARK</td>
<td>Sets whether or not a center mark is displayed when the safety zone is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>Center mark is not displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ON</td>
<td>Center mark is displayed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**MEMO**

When the SAFETY ZONE item is set to OFF, "- - -" is indicated and this item cannot be selected.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FOCUS ASSIST</td>
<td>Sets the FOCUS ASSIST function. Press the [FOCUS ASSIST] button on page 14 or page 18 to operate the FOCUS ASSIST function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NORMAL</td>
<td>Only the FOCUS ASSIST function operates. (The focus area becomes blue, red or green, making it easier to focus.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACCU-FOCUS</td>
<td>The FOCUS ASSIST function and ACCU-FOCUS (forced focus) function operates. This makes the depth of field shallower, making it easier to focus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COLOR</td>
<td>Sets the display color for focusing when running the FOCUS ASSIST function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLUE</td>
<td>Displays the area of focus in blue.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RED</td>
<td>Displays the area of focus in red.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GREEN</td>
<td>Displays the area of focus in green.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LEVEL</td>
<td>Sets the display range of the focal area when the FOCUS ASSIST function is in use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOW</td>
<td>Displays the focal area narrower than MIDDLE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIDDLE</td>
<td>Displays the focal area in normal setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIGH</td>
<td>Displays the focal area wider than MIDDLE.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NEXT PAGE**

When you display the LCD/VF[1/4] menu screen, move the cursor to this position and press the SHUTTER dial.

**PAGE BACK**

When the cursor is in this position, press the SHUTTER dial to return to the LCD/VF[1/4] menu screen.

---

### LCD/VF[2/4] Menu Screen

The LCD/VF[2/4] menu screen can only be set in camera mode.

#### Item Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LCD MIRROR MODE</td>
<td>Sets the image display method when the LCD monitor is in counterview position.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NORMAL</td>
<td>Image is displayed without inverting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIRROR</td>
<td>Inverted image is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEMO</td>
<td>MIRROR setting is disabled when the color bar is displayed or status is in magnified size.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NEXT PAGE**

When you display the LCD/VF[2/4] menu screen, move the cursor to this position and press the SHUTTER dial.

**PAGE BACK**

When the cursor is in this position, press the SHUTTER dial to return to the LCD/VF[1/4] menu screen.

---

1. SAFETY ZONE and CENTER MARK will not be displayed when this device is in VTR mode (PLAY, STL, FWD, REV).
**MENU SCREENS**


[1/2] screen is displayed in the VTR mode.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VIDEO FORMAT</td>
<td>Selects whether to display the video format in the status display on the LCD monitor or the viewfinder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Camera mode: STATUS 1 screen, VTR mode: STATUS screen)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ON : Displays the video format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OFF : Does not display the video format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In camera mode : Displays the video format set in the REC item on the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In VTR mode : Displays the video format recorded on the playback tape or the video format input from the IEEE1394 connector.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TAPE REMAIN</td>
<td>Selects whether or not the remaining tape time (minutes) is shown in the status display on the LCD monitor or in the viewfinder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Camera mode: STATUS 1 screen, VTR mode: STATUS screen)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ON : Displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OFF : Not displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCD+VF</td>
<td>Selects the LCD monitor and viewfinder display switching method.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ON : Viewfinder always displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OFF : Turns off the viewfinder display when the LCD monitor is opened.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCD CONTRAST</td>
<td>Adjusts the contrast of the LCD.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Settings: MN (–5) – 4, NORMAL (0) – 4, MAX (5))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VF CONTRAST</td>
<td>Adjusts the contrast of the viewfinder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Settings: MN (–5) – 4, NORMAL (0) – 4, MAX (5))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLACK &amp; WHITE</td>
<td>Selects the LCD monitor and viewfinder display style.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COLOR</td>
<td>Displays the image in color.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B&amp;W</td>
<td>Displays the image in black and white.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAGE BACK</td>
<td>Camera mode: When the cursor is in this position, press the SHUTTER dial to return to the LCD/VF[14] menu screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VTR mode: When the cursor is in this position, press the SHUTTER dial to return to the LCD/VF[12] menu screen.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**MEMO**

- Whether the time code or user's bits data is shown is selected with the TC DISPLAY switch.
- Shutter display method is fixed to SEC for other settings. ("[SEC]" is displayed)
- Please use the remaining battery level and remaining time as a reference for shooting duration.


[2/2] screen is displayed in the VTR mode.

* This is not displayed in VTR mode.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LCD+VF</td>
<td>Selects the LCD monitor and viewfinder display switching method.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ON : Viewfinder always displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OFF : Turns off the viewfinder display when the LCD monitor is opened.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCD CONTRAST</td>
<td>Adjusts the contrast of the LCD.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Settings: MN (–5) – 4, NORMAL (0) – 4, MAX (5))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VF CONTRAST</td>
<td>Adjusts the contrast of the viewfinder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Settings: MN (–5) – 4, NORMAL (0) – 4, MAX (5))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLACK &amp; WHITE</td>
<td>Selects the LCD monitor and viewfinder display style.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COLOR</td>
<td>Displays the image in color.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B&amp;W</td>
<td>Displays the image in black and white.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAGE BACK</td>
<td>Camera mode: When the cursor is in this position, press the SHUTTER dial to return to the LCD/VF[14] menu screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VTR mode: When the cursor is in this position, press the SHUTTER dial to return to the LCD/VF[12] menu screen.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**MEMO**

- When TIME or CAPA% is selected, the battery indicator displayed before the value changes depending on the remaining battery level:
  - 12% or less
  - 12% to less than 50%
  - 50% or more
- When remaining battery level becomes less than 12%, the display changes to "RES".
- When CALIBRATION is required from the battery, the display switches between TIME (CAPA%) display (30 seconds) and "CAL" display (2 seconds) repeatedly.
- For CALIBRATION, refer to the instruction manual of Anton-Bauer Battery.

**NEXT PAGE**

Camera mode: To display the LCD/VF[4/4] menu screen, move the cursor to this position and press the SHUTTER dial. VTR mode: To display the LCD/VF[2/2] menu screen, move the cursor to this position and press the SHUTTER dial.

**PAGE BACK**

Camera mode: When the cursor is in this position, press the SHUTTER dial to return to the LCD/VF[2/4] menu screen. VTR mode: When the cursor is in this position, press the SHUTTER dial to return to the TOP MENU screen.
# TC/UB/CLOCK Menu Screen

Time codes (TC) and user’s bits (UB) can be set on this screen. Date and time is set on the TIME/DATE screen that can be reached from this screen.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TC PRESET</td>
<td>To preset the time code, align the cursor with this position and then press the SHUTTER dial.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXECUTE</td>
<td>The set time code is confirmed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CANCEL</td>
<td>The set time code is cancelled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZERO PRESET</td>
<td>Resets all time codes to &quot;0&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEMO</td>
<td>When the &quot;UB REC&quot; item is set to &quot;OFF&quot;, &quot;--------&quot; is displayed and this cannot be selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UB PRESET</td>
<td>To preset the user’s bit data, align the cursor with this position and then press the SHUTTER dial.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXECUTE</td>
<td>The set user’s bit data are confirmed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CANCEL</td>
<td>The set user’s bit data are cancelled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZERO PRESET</td>
<td>Resets all user’s bits data to &quot;0&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEMO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DROP FRAME</td>
<td>Selects whether the time code generator framing mode is drop-frame or non-drop-frame.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DROP</td>
<td>Internal time code generator works in drop-frame mode. Set this when the recorded time is important.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NON DROP</td>
<td>Internal time code generator works in non-drop-frame mode. Set this when the number of frames is important.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UB REC</td>
<td>To select whether or not the user’s bit data should be recorded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ON</td>
<td>User’s bits are recorded during recording.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>User’s bits are not recorded during recording.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEMO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TC DATA</td>
<td>Sets the time code value for the point when the Record-Standby mode is engaged following completion of HEADER REC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXECUTE</td>
<td>Confirms the set time code.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZERO PRESET</td>
<td>Resets all time codes to &quot;0&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CANCEL</td>
<td>Clears the set time code.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEMO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UB DATA</td>
<td>Sets the user’s bits of the HEADER REC section.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXECUTE</td>
<td>Confirms the set user’s bits.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZERO PRESET</td>
<td>Resets all user’s bits data to &quot;0&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CANCEL</td>
<td>Clears the set user’s bits.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEMO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BARS TIME</td>
<td>Sets the duration (seconds) in which the color bar signal and test tone (1 kHz) is recorded during HEADER REC. (1-sec steps)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLACK TIME</td>
<td>Sets the duration (seconds) in which the black signal is recorded during HEADER REC. (1-sec steps)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

# HEADER REC Menu Screen

The HEADER REC menu screen is used for settings related to the HEADER REC function. See page 59.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>START KEY</td>
<td>Sets whether the HEADER REC operation should be executed when the REC/VTR trigger button is pressed while the STOP button is pressed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DISABLE</td>
<td>HEADER REC operation is not executed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STOP+REC</td>
<td>HEADER REC operation is executed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEMO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TC DATA</td>
<td>Sets the time code value at the point when the Record-Standby mode is engaged may differ some frames from the value set for this item.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UB DATA</td>
<td>Sets the user’s bits for the normal recording section.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXECUTE</td>
<td>Confirms the set user’s bits.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZERO PRESET</td>
<td>Resets all user’s bits data to &quot;0&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CANCEL</td>
<td>Clears the set user’s bits.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEMO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PAGE BACK</td>
<td>The TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen returns when the SHUTTER dial is pressed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

1. This can be displayed and selected when 60/30 is set for the FRAME RATE item on the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen.
2. This can be displayed and selected when 50/25 is set for the FRAME RATE item on the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen.
TIME/DATE Menu Screen

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DISPLAY</td>
<td>Sets whether the date and time are shown in the status display on the LCD monitor or in the viewfinder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>OFF</strong>: Not displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>ON</strong>: Displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When a tape with time and date not recorded is played back, there will be no display of time and date even when this item is set to <strong>ON</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DISPLAY MODE</td>
<td>In the Camera mode, the date and time are displayed in accordance with the following settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>BARS + CAM</strong>: Date and time are always displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>BARS</strong>: Date and time are displayed when the color bars are output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CAM</strong>: Date and time are displayed when the camera images are output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When the DISPLAY item is set to <strong>OFF</strong>, &quot;-- &quot; is indicated and this item cannot be selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DISPLAY STYLE</td>
<td>Selects the style for the date and time display.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>DATE + TIME</strong>: Date and time are displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>DATE</strong>: Date only is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>TIME</strong>: Time only is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When the DISPLAY item is set to <strong>OFF</strong>, &quot;-- &quot; is indicated and this item cannot be selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATE STYLE</td>
<td>Selects the style for the date display.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>YY/MM/DD</strong>: Displayed in the format of year/month/date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>MM/DD/YY</strong>: Displayed in the format of month/date/year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>DD/MM/YY</strong>: Displayed in the format of date/month/year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Variation Range: U model: MM/DD/YY  E model: DD/MM/YY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When the DISPLAY item is set to <strong>OFF</strong>, &quot;-- &quot; is indicated and this item cannot be selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIME STYLE</td>
<td>Selects the style for the time display.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>24 HOUR</strong>: Displays the time using the 24-hour system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>12 HOUR</strong>: Displays the time using the 12-hour system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When the DISPLAY item is set to <strong>OFF</strong>, &quot;-- &quot; is indicated and this item cannot be selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEC DISPLAY</td>
<td>Selects whether to display the seconds in the time display.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>ON</strong>: Seconds are displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>OFF</strong>: Seconds are not displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When the DISPLAY item is set to <strong>OFF</strong>, &quot;-- &quot; is indicated and this item cannot be selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIME SHIFT</td>
<td>Sets the clock offset time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>ON</strong>: Clock offset time is set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>OFF</strong>: Clock offset time is not set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When the DISPLAY item is set to <strong>OFF</strong>, &quot;-- &quot; is indicated and this item cannot be selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLOCK ADJUST</td>
<td>Adjusts the clock with this position and then press the SHUTTER dial.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>ON</strong>: Clock offset time is set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>OFF</strong>: Clock offset time is not set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAGE BACK</td>
<td>The TOUCH CLOCK menu returns when the SHUTTER dial is pressed while the cursor is at this position.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEXT PAGE</td>
<td>To display the OTHERS[1/2] menu screen, move the cursor to this position and press the SHUTTER dial.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

OTHERS[1/2] Menu Screen

The OTHERS menu screen consists of two screens (1/2 screen, 2/2 screen)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ANALOG OUT CHAR.</td>
<td>Sets whether or not to display characters such as status and menus on the screen for the [Y/PB/Pr] and [VIDEO OUT] terminals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>ON</strong>: On-screen display.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>OFF</strong>: No on-screen display.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEMO</td>
<td>When ANALOG OUT CHAR. is set to <strong>ON</strong>, the content displayed on the viewfinder is also displayed in the video from the video output terminal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>During VTR recording, the mode is displayed in red on the viewfinder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>variation: output or playback in DV format</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Normally, set &quot;3MIN&quot; and use this to prevent head clogging and tape damage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When used in a cold environment or when the stopped or STILL status continues, the setting will be 3 minutes or less regardless of the setting on the menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LONG PAUSE TIME</td>
<td>Selects the time (minutes) before the tape protect mode (drum rotation stopped) is engaged when the record-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Normally, set &quot;3MIN&quot; and use this to prevent head clogging and tape damage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ing standby condition continues.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>3MIN</strong>: 3 minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>5MIN</strong>: 5 minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALARM VR LEVEL</td>
<td>Selects whether or not alarm sound is emitted and the volume of the alarm sound.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>OFF</strong>: Sound is not output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>LOW</strong>: Alarm sound is soft.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>MIDDLE</strong>: Alarm sound is normal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>HIGH</strong>: Alarm sound is loud.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FRONT TALLY</td>
<td>Selects the lighting method of the FRONT TALLY lamp during recording</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>BLINK</strong>: The lamp blinks from when the REC/PR trigger is pressed and until recording starts. The lamp lights steadily during recording.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>ON</strong>: The lamp lights only during recording.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>OFF</strong>: The lamp is always off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BACK TALLY</td>
<td>Selects the lighting method of the BACK TALLY lamp during recording</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>BLINK</strong>: The lamp blinks from when the REC/PR trigger is pressed and until recording starts. The lamp lights steadily during recording.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>ON</strong>: The lamp lights only during recording.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>OFF</strong>: The lamp is always off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FORMAT LED</td>
<td>Sets whether or not the [HDV/DV LED] on page 15 lights for HDV format or DV format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>ON</strong>: Lights.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>OFF</strong>: Does not light.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAGE BACK</td>
<td>The TOP MENU screen returns when the SHUTTER dial is pressed while the cursor is at this position.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**OTHERS[2/2] Menu Screen**

* This is not displayed in VTR mode.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1394 REC TRIGGER</strong></td>
<td>Sets how to control the REC trigger command output from the IEEE1394 connector. (Can be displayed and set in camera mode)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>Does not control the backup device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYNCR</td>
<td>Controls the backup device in conjunction with the recording start/stop mode status on this device, and if there is no videocassette or if no tape remains for recording, controls the backup device in conjunction with the REC trigger button and the lens VTR button on this device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPLIT</td>
<td>The REC trigger button on the right panel of this device controls the backup device recording start/stop. Set this when you want to control the timing of the recording on this device and the backup device separately.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SERIES</td>
<td>Automatically starts recording on a backup device that is on Pause when the tape on this device has less than 3 minutes remaining during shooting.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**MEMO**

- If you use the backup recording function on the BR-HD50, set this item to OFF.
- The cursor ( △ ) does not move to this item when this device is recording.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>BACK SPACE [HDV]</strong></td>
<td>The function controls the camera tape transport, back space and pre-roll time when the camera is connected to an external HDD or external backup Recorder via IEEE1394 in HDV mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P-1394</strong></td>
<td>Priority for IEEE1394 recording (Auto setting)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P-TAPE</strong></td>
<td>Priority for camera VCR recording</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**BACK SPACE [HDV]**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>IEEE1394 connection</th>
<th>1394 REC TRIGGER (See page 94)</th>
<th>Internal VCR start delay</th>
<th>External Recorder or HDD via IEEE1394 terminal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Connected and Power ON</td>
<td>SYNCR</td>
<td>approx. 3 seconds</td>
<td>See Note 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No connection or Power OFF</td>
<td>SYNCR</td>
<td>approx. 1 second</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**P-1394**

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Connected and Power ON</td>
<td>SYNCR</td>
<td>approx. 3 seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No connection or Power OFF</td>
<td>SYNCR</td>
<td>approx. 1 second</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**P-TAPE**

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Connected and Power ON</td>
<td>SYNCR</td>
<td>approx. 3 seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No connection or Power OFF</td>
<td>SYNCR</td>
<td>approx. 1 second</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**MEMO**

- REC start signal will be sent 3 seconds after pressing REC trigger button.
- Actual recording start time is depending on recorder performance.

Note 2:

- REC start signal will be sent just after pressing REC trigger button.
- Actual recording start time is depending on recorder performance.

**Back Space**

- In this mode, the IEEE1394 stream is discontinuous during internal VCR back space editing (when the REC trigger is operated). This may result in breaks in the recording on tape on an external recorder. In the case of HDD recording this may result in device staying in REC PAUSE or divided files.

**MEMO**

- The cursor ( △ ) does not move to this item when this device is recording.

---

**DR-HD100 A.OFF**

Selects whether or not to turn OFF the DR-HD100 (HDD unit by FOCUS enhancements) when this device is turned OFF.

**EXECUTE** | Power turns OFF with this device.

**MEMO**

- * This setting is canceled and the DR-HD100 does not turn OFF in the following instances.
  - DR-HD100 REC TRIGGER item is set to OFF
  - VTR mode is set
  - When the DR-HD100 power turns off and this device is turned ON again, after 12 seconds, “DR-HD100 power!” appears on the LCD monitor for 7 seconds.

**MENU ALL RESET**

Selects whether or not to reset the menu screen settings to initial settings.

**CANCEL** | The settings are not reset.
**EXECUTE** | The settings are reset.

**MEMO**

- The cursor ( △ ) does not move to this item when the VTR is activated.
- If the current menu settings and the factory settings have different FRAME RATE settings, “REBOOT!” is displayed for 3 seconds, this device automatically turns off and then turns on.

---

**PAGE BACK**

When the cursor is in this position, press the SHUTTER dial once to return to the OTHERS[1/2] menu screen.

---

**DRUM HOUR**

Displays the drum usage time.
Use as an estimate for regular maintenance.

**MEMO**

- The cursor ( △ ) does not move to this item.

**FAN HOUR**

Displays the fan motor usage time.
Use as an estimate for regular maintenance.

**MEMO**

- The cursor ( △ ) does not move to this item.
FILE MANAGE Menu Screen

You can perform the following operations in the FILE MANAGE menu screen.

- Settings corresponding to shooting conditions can be read immediately with the following read-only files.
  - LIVE HD60P: Ideal setting for HD60P format
  - LIVE HD50P: Ideal setting for HD50P format
  - CINEMA HD24P: Ideal setting for movie-quality shooting
  * The read-only files listed above cannot be saved or reset.
- Save menu settings (Camcorder: CAM1, 2, 3, 4; SD memory card: EXT1, 2, 3, 4) to files.
- Load saved files.
- You can set a SUB NAME for the file to be saved.
- Reset the menu settings to the factory settings.
- Initialize (format) an SD memory card.
- When you set CANCEL for the LOAD, STORE, RESET and FORMAT SD CARD items, these operations are not executed.
- A message is displayed in the LCD monitor or the viewfinder.
  - EXECUTE: Displayed for 3 seconds
  - COMPLETE: Displayed for 3 seconds
  - ERROR: Flashes (Error displays → See page 97.)

If there is an error:
- Press the STATUS button → Return to the normal screen.
- Press the SHUTTER dial → Return to the FILE MANAGE menu screen.
- To exit the FILE MANAGE screen: Move the cursor (→) to PAGE BACK and press the SHUTTER dial or press the STATUS button.

Displaying the FILE MANAGE menu screen

Select the FILE MANAGE item on the TOP MENU screen.

Loading a menu settings file

Select the LOAD FILE item on the FILE MANAGE menu screen.

1. Turn the SHUTTER dial, bring the cursor (►) to SELECT and press the SHUTTER dial.
   - The file name setting area flashes.
2. Turn the SHUTTER dial, select the file to load and press the SHUTTER dial.
3. Turn the SHUTTER dial, bring the cursor (►) to LOAD and press the SHUTTER dial.
   - EXECUTE flashes.
4. With EXECUTE selected, press the SHUTTER dial to read the menu settings in the selected file.
   - If the current menu settings and the menu settings to be loaded have different video format settings, "REBOOT!" is displayed for 3 seconds, this device turns off automatically and then turns on.

Setting a SUB NAME

If you do not want to set a SUB NAME, go to Step 5.

1. Turn the SHUTTER dial, bring the cursor (►) to SUB NAME and press the SHUTTER dial.
   - The first character in the file name flashes.
2. Turn the SHUTTER dial, select the character, and press the SHUTTER dial.
   - The second character in the file name flashes.
   - Repeat Step 2, up through the eighth character.
3. Turn the SHUTTER dial, bring the cursor (►) to STORE and press the SHUTTER dial.
   - If the file already exists, "OVERWRITE" flashes.
   - EXECUTE (if the file already exists, "OVERWRITE") flashes.

4. With EXECUTE selected, turn the SHUTTER dial to save the menu settings to the selected file.

Error displays

- NO CARD: No SD memory card is inserted. Insert an SD memory card.
- NO FORMAT: The SD memory card is not initialized (formatted). Initialize (format) the SD memory card.
- NO ACCESS: There is a problem with the SD memory card. Replace the SD memory card.
- WRITE PROTECT: The SD memory card may be write-protected. Check that write-protection is disabled.
- DISK FULL: The SD memory card does not have enough free space. Delete unwanted data or initialize (format) the card.
- INVALID VIDEO FORMAT: A settings file for a video format that is not supported was called up.

Settings files for video formats that are not supported cannot be called up.
- READ ONLY FILE: Indicates a read-only file. Read-only files cannot be saved.

Saving settings

Select the STORE FILE item on the FILE MANAGE menu screen.

1. Turn the SHUTTER dial, bring the cursor (►) to SELECT and press the SHUTTER dial.
   - The file name setting area flashes.
2. Turn the SHUTTER dial, select the file to save to, and press the SHUTTER dial.
3. Turn the SHUTTER dial, bring the cursor (►) to STORE and press the SHUTTER dial.
   - EXECUTE (if the file already exists, "OVERWRITE") flashes.

Settable Characters

A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9

Space
FILE MANAGE Menu Screen
(Cont’d)

Resetting the menu settings to the factory settings

Select the RESET FILE.. item on the FILE MANAGE menu screen.

1. Turn the SHUTTER dial, bring the cursor (▲) to SELECT and press the SHUTTER dial.
   • The file name setting area for the file to be reset flashes.
2. Turn the SHUTTER dial, select the name of the file to reset, and press the SHUTTER dial.
   • EXECUTE flashes.
3. Turn the SHUTTER dial, bring the cursor (▲) to the RESET item and press the SHUTTER dial.
   • EXECUTE flashes.
4. With EXECUTE selected, press the SHUTTER dial to reset the settings.

If there is an error:
Check items ① and ② in “Before initializing (formatting) a card”.

MEMO
Even if CAM1, CAM2, CAM3, or CAM4 are reset, the current settings are not reset.
To reset the currently set values, select “CURRENT”.

FEATURES OF THE CAMERA SECTION

How to Use Skin Detail

This function suppresses edge sharpening in the skin color areas of the video signal, enabling velvety, smooth skin tones.

Setting the skin detail function color and range

1. Display the ADVANCED PROCESS menu screen.
   In menu setting procedure

2. Turn the SHUTTER dial, bring the cursor (▲) to the SKIN COLOR ADJUST item and press the SHUTTER dial.
   • The SKIN COLOR ADJUST screen is displayed.
   • The entire screen becomes black and white, and only the areas recognized by the skin detail function are displayed in color.

3. Move the cursor (▲) to the SKIN COLOR DET. item, press the SHUTTER dial and select EXECUTE to switch to skin color detection mode.
4. Shoot so that the color area you want to detect within the detection area frame is input.
   To confirm the detection area, press the SHUTTER dial and set SKIN COLOR DET. to STOP.
   • The frame on the screen is the detection area for the skin detail function.
   • The color within the detection area is recognized as the color that the skin detail function will use.
   • If the color within the detection area is not recognized as the color that the skin detail function will use, “ERROR” is displayed on the screen.

5. If you want to change the range of colors recognized with the skin color detection function, follow the steps below.
   ① Turn the SHUTTER dial, bring the cursor (▲) to the SKIN COLOR RANGE item and press the SHUTTER dial.
      → The setting area flashes and can be changed.
   ② Turn the SHUTTER dial up or down to widen or narrow the color range.
      • Set the range as you check the color display.
   ③ To confirm the color range, press the SHUTTER dial.
      • The setting returns to its initial state.

6. To stop the SKIN COLOR ADJUST function, turn the SHUTTER dial, bring the cursor (▲) to the PAGE BACK item and press the SHUTTER dial.

MEMO
In the SKIN COLOR ADJUST menu screen, the lens image is not inverted and flipped even if the REVERSE PICTURE item in the CAMERA PROCESS[2/2] menu screen is set to ROTATE.
FEATURES OF THE CAMERA SECTION

How to Use Skin Detail (Cont’d)

Using the Skin Detail Function
To use the skin detail function set on the SKIN COLOR ADJUST screen, select “ON” for the SKIN DETECT item on the CAMERA PROCESS[1/2] menu screen. In addition, you can use the LEVEL item to set three levels of suppression of skin color area detail enhancement in the video signal. See page 78.

While the skin detail function operates, the “SD” indicator is displayed on the STATUS 0 and STATUS 1 screen in the viewfinder or LCD monitor.

Confirming the color tone area adjusted with the Skin Detail function
When you push the ZEBRA switch on the front panel to “SKIN AREA”, the skin detail function turns ON, and the color area adjusted with the skin detail function is displayed in color in the LCD monitor or viewfinder.

MEMO
• When the REVERSE PICTURE item in the CAMERA PROCESS[2/2] menu screen is set to ROTATE, skin detail function is available but the detection area is not displayed in the viewfinder or LCD screen.
• When COLOR GAIN item on the ADVANCED PROCESS menu screen is set to “OFF”, only the portion the skin detail function is working is displayed in skin color. See page 80.

Outputting Color Bars

This device can output three types of color bars, depending on the camera settings.

NTSC standard : Outputs color bars compliant with the SMPTE standard.
PAL standard : Outputs color bars compliant with the EBU standard.
16:9 screen : Outputs multi-format color bars.

To output color bars, make the following settings.
1. Turn the FULL AUTO switch to “OFF”.
2. Set the BARS item on the CAMERA OPERATION menu screen to “ON”. See page 77.
   • Color bars are output.

MEMO
• You can select whether to output an audio test signal during color bar output using the TEST TONE item on the AUDIO/MIC[1/2] menu screen. See page 84.
• Color bars are not output if FULL AUTO mode is OFF or in VTR mode.
### Warnings and Responses

Warnings are displayed on the LCD monitor or the viewfinder if there was a mistaken operation, if the battery or tape is low, or if there is a problem on the VTR.

In addition, if the tape or battery is low or the VTR has a problem, the tally lamp flashes (or lights) and an alarm is output from the monitor speaker or PHONES jack.

**MEMO**

This device uses microcomputers. It may not operate properly if there is external static or interference. If this happens, turn the power off and then on again.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Display</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>60/30 INHIBIT CHANGE FRAME RATE MENU</td>
<td>The FRAME RATE item is set to 50/25 or 24, and a tape recorded in 60/30 frame is played back or it is input into the IEEE1394 port in VTR mode.</td>
<td>Sets the FRAME RATE item on the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen to match the frames.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50/25 INHIBIT CHANGE FRAME RATE MENU</td>
<td>The FRAME RATE item is set to 60/30 or 24, and a tape recorded in 50/25 frame or it is input into the IEEE1394 port in VTR mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 INHIBIT CHANGE FRAME RATE MENU</td>
<td>The FRAME RATE item is set to 50/25 or 60/30, and a tape recorded in 24 frame is played back or it is input into the IEEE1394 port in VTR mode.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DV-60I INVALID! DV-24P INVALID!</td>
<td>A tape recorded in DV-60I, DV-24P, or DV-24PA format was played back or input into the IEEE1394 connector in VTR mode on the E model.</td>
<td>This device cannot play back tapes recorded in DV-60I, DV-24P or DV-24PA format or input into the IEEE1394 connector in VTR mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DV-50P INVALID! DV-25P INVALID!</td>
<td>A tape recorded in DV-50P or DV-25P format was played back or input into the IEEE1394 connector in VTR mode on the U model.</td>
<td>This device cannot play back or input an HDV-SX50P format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDV-SX50P INVALID!</td>
<td>A tape recorded in HDV-SX50P format was played back or input into the IEEE1394 connector in VTR mode.</td>
<td>Cannot play back a copy guarded tape.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDV-SX50P INVALID!</td>
<td>A tape recorded in HDV-SX50P format was played back or input into the IEEE1394 connector in VTR mode.</td>
<td>This is used when tapes recorded in HDV-SX50P format are edited.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NO TAPE*</td>
<td>No videocassette tape is inserted.</td>
<td>The display disappears when the head cleaning tape is removed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FAN MOTOR HOUR</td>
<td>The videocassette cover is not firmly shut.</td>
<td>Lightly push the top center of the videocassette cover.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NO TAPE*</td>
<td>No videocassette tape is inserted.</td>
<td>Insert a cassette tape.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When status indications are magnified, warnings are not displayed on the LCD monitor. See “Magnified Status Indications on the LCD Monitor” on page 29.
**Warnings and Responses (Cont’d)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Code</th>
<th>Error Details</th>
<th>This device Operation</th>
<th>Remedy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0201</td>
<td>CONDENSATION ON DRUM</td>
<td>Indicates dew formation (condensation).</td>
<td>Operation stops. All operations are rejected. Leave this device with the power ON, until the indication disappears. <strong>Ref. See page 95</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2200</td>
<td>LOADING FAILURE</td>
<td>Tape cannot be loaded.</td>
<td>Switch the power OFF and then switch it back ON. However, the tape may be damaged depending on the circumstances. Please consult the person in charge of professional video equipment at your nearest JVC-authorized service agent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3200</td>
<td>UNLOADING FAILURE</td>
<td>Tape cannot be unloaded.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4100</td>
<td>CASSETTE EJECT FAILURE</td>
<td>Irregularity with eject operation.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5605 - 5609</td>
<td>DEFECTIVE TAPE</td>
<td>Tape is out.</td>
<td>Operation stops. Press the EJECT button to take out the cassette. If the tape runs out during recording, switch the power OFF and then switch it back ON, press the EJECT button, and then take out the cassette.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5702</td>
<td>TAPE END DET. ERROR</td>
<td>Tape end sensor error.</td>
<td>Operation stops. All operations are rejected. Switch the power OFF and then switch it back ON. However, the tape may be damaged depending on the circumstances. Please consult the person in charge of professional video equipment at your nearest JVC-authorized service agent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5707</td>
<td>TAPE BEGIN DET. ERROR</td>
<td>Tape beginning sensor error.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7001</td>
<td>DRUM MOTOR FAILURE</td>
<td>Drum rotation error.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7002</td>
<td>CAP MOTOR FAILURE</td>
<td>Capstan rotation error.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7202 - 7203</td>
<td>SUPPLY REEL FAILURE</td>
<td>supply reel rotation error.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7302 - 7303</td>
<td>TAKE UP REEL FAILURE</td>
<td>take up reel rotation error.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8200</td>
<td>EMERGENCY TAPE!</td>
<td>tape problem detected.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>TURN POWER OFF</td>
<td>System error when power is turned on.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>TURN BACK ON LATER</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>MAX/LEO LED, VTR indicator and TALLY lamp flash. Only POWER switch operation is accepted.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Warning Indications for VTR Abnormalities**

Should malfunctions occur during VTR operation, this device self-diagnoses the cause and shows the diagnosis together with an error code on the LCD monitor or in the viewfinder.

- **Error Code**
- **Error Details**
- **This device Operation**
- **Remedy**

### Blinking Pattern

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Blinking Pattern</th>
<th>Remaining Battery/Tape</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Slow blinking (once per sec.)</td>
<td>Remaining battery power is low.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fast blinking (four times per sec.)</td>
<td>Tape has run out.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Alarm Sound**

When remaining battery power becomes low, a warning sound is output from the monitoring loudspeaker and the PHONES jack.

(Only in Camera mode)

- When an irregularity occurs in the VTR, a warning sound is also output.

Whether or not alarm sound should be output and the volume level are selected with the ALARM VR LEVEL item on the OTHERS[1/2] menu screen.

**Alarm Indications on LCD Monitor/Viewfinder Screen**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alarm Indications on LCD Monitor/Viewfinder Screen</th>
<th>TALLY lamp</th>
<th>Alarm Sound</th>
<th>Condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VTR alarm indication (Example)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dew formation (condensation) or error has occurred in the VTR.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TAPE MOTOR FAILURE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAP MOTOR FAILURE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUPPLY REEL FAILURE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TAKE UP REEL FAILURE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EMERGENCY TAPE!</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TURN POWER OFF</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TURN BACK ON LATER</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Display symbols**
  - : Blinking once per second.
  - : Sound interrupted once per second.
  - : Blinking four times per second.
  - : Continuous sound.

- **VTR indicator**

- **Alarm Sound**

- **Condition**

- **Power Switch**

- **Battery Power**

- **Tape**

- **VTR indicator**

- **Alarm Sound**

- **Condition**
### Troubleshooting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symptoms</th>
<th>Remedy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Power cannot be switched ON. | • Is power supply connected correctly?  
• Is battery pack recharged?  
• Was the power turned ON immediately after being turned OFF?  
Wait at least 5 seconds before turning the power ON again once it has been turned OFF. |
| Recording is not possible. | • Is the REC LOCK switch on the handle set to "REC"?  
• Is the switch on cassette set to "REC"? If it is set to "SAVE", set it to "REC".  
• While the VTR indicator lights, press the MODE switch upward to turn on the CAM indicator. |
| Camera image does not appear on LCD monitor or in viewfinder. | • The Camera mode has not been selected. (The VTR indicator does not light.)  
While the VTR indicator lights, press the MODE switch upward to turn on the CAM indicator.  
• The switch on cassette set to "REC"? If it is set to "SAVE", set it to "REC".  
• The Camera mode has not been selected. (The VTR indicator does not light.)  
While the VTR indicator lights, camera image will not be output.  
Press the CAM/VTR switch upward to turn on the VTR indicator. |
| Image shown on LCD monitor or in viewfinder is dark or blurred. | • The Camera mode has not been selected. (The VTR indicator does not light.)  
While the VTR indicator lights, camera image will not be output.  
Press the CAM/VTR switch upward to turn on the VTR indicator.  
• Adjust the brightness of the LCD monitor or viewfinder screen.  
• Is the ND filter knob set to 2?  
• Is the iris closed?  
• Is the shutter speed too fast?  
• Is the viewfinder cable correctly connected? |
| Playback does not start when the play button is pressed. | • In the Camera mode, is "STOP" indicated as the VTR operation mode indicator?  
When "STBY" is indicated, press the STOP button to display "STOP".  
• In the Camera mode, is "STOP" indicated as the VTR operation mode indicator?  
When "STBY" is indicated, press the STOP button to display "STOP".  
• Is the PB TAPE item on the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen set to a setting other than AUTO? If this menu item and the tape format do not match, the tape cannot be played back. |
| Cannot play back. | • Is the PB TAPE item on the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen set to a setting other than AUTO? If this menu item and the tape format do not match, the tape cannot be played back.  
• Is the IEEE1394 switch set correctly? |
| Noise interferes with playback video. | • When head may be clogged with dirt, clean head with the special head cleaning tape.  
- See "Precautions for Use of Head Cleaning Tape" on page 7. |
| Sound is not output during playback. | • Is the AUDIO SELECT item on the AUDIO menu screen set to CH1/2A?  
To output the sound of the recording, set to CH1/2A.  
• Is the PB TAPE item on the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen set to a setting other than AUTO? If this menu item and the tape format do not match, the tape cannot be played back. |
| Noise appears when playing back a tape recorded on another unit. | • When a tape recorded on another unit is played back or used for recording, this phenomenon may occur due to tracking errors.  
• The transient section between scenes recorded on other units and those recorded on this device may appear disturbed.  
• The transience between scenes recorded on other units and those recorded on this device may appear disturbed.  
• The front section's audio level control doesn't work.  
When a tape recorded on another unit is played back or used for recording, this phenomenon may occur due to tracking errors.  
• When a tape recorded on another unit is played back or used for recording, this phenomenon may occur due to tracking errors.  
• The transience between scenes recorded on other units and those recorded on this device may appear disturbed. |
| Battery alarm is displayed even if a fully charged battery pack is put in. | • Is the battery pack old?  
• Is the FULL AUTO switch set to "ON"?  
• Is the SD memory card write-protected?  
- See page 34. |
| Cassette cannot be ejected after the power is turned ON. | • The capacity of the power supply may be insufficient. Check the power voltage.  
• The tape may be jammed.  
• The tape may be jammed. |
| Time code or user’s bits data not displayed. | • Is the FC/UB item on the LCD/VF/SH menu screen set to OFF?  
If so, set to ON.  
• The tape may be jammed.  
• The tape may be jammed. |
| The data and time are not displayed or recorded. | • Is the DISPLAY item on the TIME/DATA menu screen set to OFF?  
Set to ON when the data should be displayed and recorded.  
• Is the date and time setting made?  
- See "Setting and Displaying the Date and Time" on pages 41, 42. |

---

### How to Display the Hour Meter

The drum and fan motor usage times are displayed in the DRUM HOUR item and the FAN HOUR items on the OTHERS[2/2] menu screen as the hour meters on this device. Use as an estimate for regular maintenance.  
See page 7.

1. Turn the POWER switch ON.
2. Press the STATUS button for at least 1 second to display the TOP MENU screen.
3. Turn the SHUTTER dial, select the OTHERS... item, and press the SHUTTER dial.
4. Select the NEXT PAGE item on the OTHERS[1/2] menu screen and press the SHUTTER dial.

The OTHERS[2/2] menu screen is displayed.

#### OTHERS[2/2] Menu Screen

- **DRUM HOUR item**: Displays the drum usage hours.  
- **FAN HOUR item**: Displays the fan motor usage hours.

5. To return to the normal screen display, do one of the following:
   - Press the STATUS button.
   - Return to the TOP MENU screen, select the EXIT item on the TOP MENU screen and press the SHUTTER dial.

---

**OTHERS[2/2] menu screen**

Drum usage hours (h)  
Fan motor usage hours (h)
Specifications

[General]
Power requirements: DC 12 V, 1.9 A
Power consumption: Approx. 23 W (in the Record mode)
Dimensions: 224(W) × 242.3(H) × 401(D) mm (U model), 224(W) × 242.3(H) × 414(D) mm (E model)
Mass: 3.6 kg (8 lbs.) (U model), 3.8 kg (8.4 lbs.) (E model)
Temperature: Operating: 0°C to 40°C (32°F to 104°F), Storage: –20°C to 60°C (–4°F to 140°F)
Humidity: Operating: 30% to 80% RH, Storage: 85% RH or less

[Camera section]
Image pickup device: 1/3” interline-transfer CCDs
Color separation: F1.4, 3-color separation prism
Number of total pixels: Approx. 1,110,000 pixels
Color bars: SMPTE/EBU type Sync system: Internal sync (built-in SSG)
Lens mount: 1/3” bayonet system
ND filter: 1/4ND, 1/16ND
Gain: 0, 3, 6, 9, 12, 15, 18 dB, ALC
Electronic shutter: Standard value: 59.94 Hz (U model)/50 Hz (E model), Fixed values:
- 7.6 - 10,000 Hz, 11 steps (HDV HD30p/DV HD60p/DV 60i, 6.25 - 10,000 Hz, 11 steps (HDV HD32sp/DV HD50p/DV 50i), 6 - 10,000 Hz, 12 steps (HDV HD24p/DV 24p, 6.25 - 10,000 Hz, 11 steps; DV 25p)
Variable scan: 30.03 - 10,489.5 Hz (HDV HD60p/DV HD50p/DV 50i, 25.04 - 10,489.5 Hz (HDV HD50p/DV HD25p/DV HD50/DV HD25p), 24.01 - 10,489.5 Hz (HDV HD24p/DV 24p)
Dynamic range: 300% or more

[Time Code]
Time code signal: Compliance with SMPTE/EBU standard

[Connectors]
Analog composite output
Y: 1.0 V (p-p), 75 Ω, unbalanced (RCA)
Pb/Pb: 0.7 V (p-p), 75 Ω, unbalanced (BNC)
Audio inputs
Mic: –60 dBs, 3 kΩ, balanced (XLR), +48 V output for phantom power supply
Line: +4 dBs, 10 kΩ, balanced (XLR)
Audio outputs
–48 dB, low impedance, unbalanced (RCA +2)
Earphone jack: –17 dBs to –60 dBs, 8-Ω impedence (stereo mini-jack +2)
IEEE1394 connector: 6-pin

[DV]
Video signal recording: DV format, 8-bit, 25 Mbps
Compression: DV compression, 4:1:1 (NTSC), 4:2:2 (PAL)
Audio:
Audio signal recording: MPEG1 Audio Layer II
Compression: MPEG1 Audio Layer II

[EXTERNAL DIMENSIONS (unit: mm)]

ACCESSORIES
Lens: 1 (Excluding the CHU/CHE model)
Microphone: 1
Core Filter: 1
Clamp Filter: 4
SD memory card: 1
Instruction Manual: 1
Warranty Card: 1
(USA and Canada only)

* Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.
Thank you for purchasing this JVC product. Before operating this device, please read the instructions carefully to ensure the best possible performance.

For Customer Use:

Enter below the Serial No. which is located on the body. Retain this information for future reference.

Model No.
Serial No.

* The illustration shows the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 HD CAMERA RECORDER with the provided lens, viewfinder and microphone attached.
Important Safeguards

1. Read all of these instructions.
2. Keep these instructions.
3. Heed all warnings.
4. Follow all instructions.
5. Do not use this apparatus near water.
6. Clean only with dry cloth.
7. Do not block any ventilation openings. Install in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.
8. Do not install near any heat sources such as radiators, heat registers, stoves, or other apparatus (including amplifiers) that produce heat.
9. Do not defeat the safety purpose of the polarized or grounding-type plug. A polarized plug has two blades with one wider than the other. A grounding type plug has two blades and a third grounding prong. The wide blade or the third prong is provided for your safety. If the provided plug does not fit into your outlet, consult an electrician for replacement of the obsolete outlet.
10. Protect the power cord from being walked on or pinched particularly at plug, convenience receptacles, and the point where they exit from the apparatus.
11. Only use attachments/accessories specified by the manufacturer.
12. Use only with the cart, stand, tripod, bracket, or table specified by the manufacturer, or sold with the apparatus. When a cart is used, use caution when moving the cart/apparatus combination to avoid injury from tip-over.
13. Unplug this apparatus during lightning storms or when unused for long periods of time.
14. Refer all servicing to qualified service personnel. Servicing is required when the apparatus has been damaged in any way, such as power-supply cord or plug is damaged, liquid has been spilled or objects have fallen into the apparatus, the apparatus has been exposed to rain or moisture, does not operate normally, or has been dropped.

Safety Precautions

FOR USA AND CANADA

CAUTION: TO REDUCE THE RISK OF ELECTRIC SHOCK, DO NOT REMOVE COVER (OR BACK). NO USER SERVICEABLE PARTS INSIDE. REFER SERVICING TO QUALIFIED SERVICE PERSONNEL.

INFORMATION:

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:
- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

CAUTION: CHANGES OR MODIFICATIONS NOT APPROVED BY JVC COULD VOID USER’S AUTHORITY TO OPERATE THE EQUIPMENT.

THIS DEVICE COMPLIES WITH PART 15 OF THE FCC RULES. OPERATIONS SUBJECT TO THE FOLLOWING TWO CONDITIONS: (1) THIS DEVICE MAY NOT CAUSE HARMFUL INTERFERENCE, AND (2) THIS DEVICE MUST ACCEPT ANY INTERFERENCE RECEIVED, INCLUDING INTERFERENCE THAT MAY CAUSE UNDESIRABLE OPERATION.

INFORMATION (FOR CANADA) RENSEIGNEMENT (POUR CANADA)

This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

WARNING:

TO REDUCE THE RISK OF FIRE OR ELECTRIC SHOCK, DO NOT EXPOSE THIS APPLIANCE TO RAIN OR MOISTURE.

This unit should be used with 12V DC only.

NOTE:
The rating plate (serial number plate) is on the bottom of the unit.

CAUTION:

To prevent electric shock, do not open the cabinet. No user serviceable parts inside. Refer servicing to qualified service personnel.

AVERTISSEMENT:

POUR EVITER LES RISQUES D’INCENDIE OU D’ELECTROCUTION, NE PAS EXPOSER L’APPAREIL A L’HUMIDITE OU A LA PLUIE.

Ce magnétoscope ne doit être utilisé que sur du courant direct en 12V.

ATTENTION:
Afin d’éviter tout risque d’incendie ou d’électrocution, ne pas utiliser d’autres sources d’alimentation électrique.

REMARQUE:
La plaque signalétique (plaque du numéro desérie) est située sur le cadre inférieur de l’unité.

Due to design modifications, data given in this instruction book are subject to possible change without prior notice.

The apparatus shall not be exposed to dripping or splashing and that no objects filled with liquids, such as vases, shall be placed close to the apparatus.

Worlded - “CAUTION - Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.”
FOR EUROPE

This equipment is in conformity with the provisions and protection requirements of the corresponding European Directives. This equipment is designed for professional video appliances and can be used in the following environments:
- residential area (in houses)
- commercial and light industry; e.g. offices or theatres
- urban outdoors

In order to keep the best performance and furthermore for electromagnetic compatibility we recommend to use cables not exceeding the following length:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Port</th>
<th>Cable</th>
<th>Length</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DC IN</td>
<td>Exclusive Cable</td>
<td>2 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIDEO</td>
<td>Coaxial Cable</td>
<td>3 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X, P, Pr</td>
<td>Coaxial Cable</td>
<td>3 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUDIO INPUT1, 2</td>
<td>Coaxial Cable</td>
<td>3 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUDIO OUT CH1, 2</td>
<td>Shielded Cable</td>
<td>3 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phones 1, 2</td>
<td>Exclusive Cable</td>
<td>2 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEEE1394 (HDV/DV)</td>
<td>Exclusive Cable</td>
<td>4.5 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SD/SDI IN</td>
<td>Coaxial Cable</td>
<td>3 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HD/SDI OUT</td>
<td>Coaxial Cable</td>
<td>3 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REMOTE</td>
<td>Exclusive Cable</td>
<td>5 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STUDIO</td>
<td>Exclusive Cable</td>
<td>1 m</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**WARNING:**
TO REDUCE THE RISK OF FIRE OR ELECTRIC SHOCK, DO NOT EXPOSE THIS APPLIANCE TO RAIN OR MOISTURE.
This unit should be used with 12V DC only.
CAUTION:
To prevent electric shocks and fire hazards, do not use any other power source.

**NOTE:**
The rating plate (serial number plate) is on the bottom of the unit.

**CAUTION:**
To prevent electric shock, do not open the cabinet. No user serviceable parts inside. Refer servicing to qualified service personnel.

Due to design modifications, data given in this instruction book are subject to possible change without prior notice.

The apparatus shall not be exposed to dripping or splashing and that no objects filled with liquids, such as vases, shall be placed close to the apparatus.

Worsted "CAUTION - Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type."

**Information for Users on Disposal of Old Equipment**

[European Union]
This symbol indicates that the electrical and electronic equipment should not be disposed as general household waste at its end-of-life. Instead, the product should be handed over to the applicable collection point for the recycling of electrical and electronic equipment for proper treatment, recovery and recycling in accordance with your national legislation.

By disposing of this product correctly, you will help to conserve natural resources and will help prevent potential negative effects on the environment and human health which could otherwise be caused by inappropriate waste handling of this product. For more information about collection point and recycling of this product, please contact your local municipal office, your household waste disposal service or the shop where you purchased the product. Penalties may be applicable for incorrect disposal of this waste, in accordance with national legislation.

[Business users]
If you wish to dispose of this product, please visit our web page www.jvc-europe.com to obtain information about the take-back of the product.

[Other Countries outside the European Union]
If you wish to dispose of this product, please do so in accordance with applicable national legislation or other rules in your country for the treatment of old electrical and electronic equipment.

Dear Customer,

This apparatus is in conformance with the valid European directives and standards regarding electromagnetic compatibility and electrical safety.

European representative of Victor Company of Japan Limited is JVC Technology Centre Europe GmbH
P.O. Box 10 05 32
61145 Friedberg
Germany
Time code input/output terminal and slave lock function
The time code input terminal and slave lock function are included.
The time code input terminal connects to an external time code generator.
The slave lock function synchronizes the camera's time code with an external generator.

Slave lock to an external time code generator connected to the time code input terminal.

These instructions are for the GY-HD250U/CHU and GY-HD251CHE.
Information applicable only to the GY-HD250U/CHU is marked by "(U model only)".
Information applicable only to the GY-HD251CHE is marked by "(E model only)".

ACCESSORIES

This device is a HDV/DV video system format camera recorder.

Video cassettes marked with the "RV" symbol can be used.

The following phenomena may occur when tapes recorded on other units (including another GY-HD250/HD251) are recorded or played back on this unit:

- The transient section between scenes recorded on other units and those recorded on this device may appear disturbed.
- Digital noise may appear during playback due to tracking errors.

- This device records and plays back in the SP mode. Recording or playback in the LP mode is not possible.
- Due to manufacturing dispersion of tapes, we recommend not to record pictures within the first 2 to 3 minutes from the beginning of the tape.
- Before recording important scenes, be sure to perform a test recording and confirm that both video and audio are recorded correctly.
- Recorded video and audio contents are for private use. Other use may infringe on the rights of copyright holders.
- JVC cannot assume liabilities that may derive from the impossibility of normal recording or playback of video or audio due to malfunction of this device or the videocassette.

- All product names in this manual are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies. Marks such as ™, © and ® are not used in this manual.

HDV / Mini DV

This device is a HDV/DV video system format camera recorder. Video cassettes marked with the "RV" symbol can be used.

MAIN FEATURES

- Time code input/output terminal and slave lock function
  Slave lock to an external time code generator connected to the time code input terminal.
The time code output terminal outputs time code and user's bits.

- Built-in large 3.5" color LCD display
  In addition to displaying the camera image and the playback image, the LCD monitor shows the status screens, menu screens for settings, and alarm indications.

- Built-in monitor speaker for audio checking
  The audio input can be monitored in recording or EE mode. The playback sound can be monitored in the playback mode.
The speaker also outputs an alarm tone in case an abnormal condition occurs in this device.

- Recording check function for convenient recording review function

- Camera section designed with 3-CCD system for high-quality picture
  Supports both 60 Hz/50 Hz HD or HDTV signals.

- Cross-convert video output
  You can convert video output from HDV to DV format and vice versa.

- Outputs composite, component Y/C separate and RGB signals as analog video in DV format.
  Outputs composite and component signals in HDV format.

- Features HDTV/SD SDI output terminals
  Outputs external digital HD and SD signals.

- Focus assist function
  Enables easy and accurate focusing during shooting.

- User buttons added
  Enables you to switch camera settings instantly to suit the shooting conditions.

- External video signal input enabled
  Records composite video signals from an external source.

- GENLOCK input terminal
  Input B/B (Black Burst) or HD Tri-sync signals. SC phase and HD/SD H phase adjustments can be performed.

- Time code reader/generator
  The built-in time code reader/generator can be used to record the time code and user's bits.

- Time code input/output terminal and slave lock function
  Slave lock to an external time code generator connected to the time code input terminal.
The time code output terminal outputs built-in time code generator data.

- Built-in large 3.5" color LCD display
  In addition to displaying the camera image and the playback image, the LCD monitor shows the status screens, menu screens for settings, and alarm indications.

- Built-in monitor speaker for audio checking
  The audio input can be monitored in recording or EE mode. The playback sound can be monitored in the playback mode.
The speaker also outputs an alarm tone in case an abnormal condition occurs in this device.

- Recording check function for convenient recording review function

- Camera section designed with 3-CCD system for high-quality picture
  Supports both 60 Hz/50 Hz HD or HDTV signals.

- Cross-convert video output
  You can convert video output from HDV to DV format and vice versa.

- Outputs composite, component Y/C separate and RGB signals as analog video in DV format.
  Outputs composite and component signals in HDV format.

- Features HDTV/SD SDI output terminals
  Outputs external digital HD and SD signals.

- Focus assist function
  Enables easy and accurate focusing during shooting.

- User buttons added
  Enables you to switch camera settings instantly to suit the shooting conditions.

- External video signal input enabled
  Records composite video signals from an external source.

- GENLOCK input terminal
  Input B/B (Black Burst) or HD Tri-sync signals. SC phase and HD/SD H phase adjustments can be performed.

- Time code reader/generator
  The built-in time code reader/generator can be used to record the time code and user's bits.

- Time code input/output terminal and slave lock function
  Slave lock to an external time code generator connected to the time code input terminal.
The time code output terminal outputs built-in time code generator data.

- Built-in large 3.5" color LCD display
  In addition to displaying the camera image and the playback image, the LCD monitor shows the status screens, menu screens for settings, and alarm indications.

- Built-in monitor speaker for audio checking
  The audio input can be monitored in recording or EE mode. The playback sound can be monitored in the playback mode.
The speaker also outputs an alarm tone in case an abnormal condition occurs in this device.

- Recording check function for convenient recording review function

- Camera section designed with 3-CCD system for high-quality picture
  Supports both 60 Hz/50 Hz HD or HDTV signals.

- Cross-convert video output
  You can convert video output from HDV to DV format and vice versa.

- Outputs composite, component Y/C separate and RGB signals as analog video in DV format.
  Outputs composite and component signals in HDV format.

- Features HDTV/SD SDI output terminals
  Outputs external digital HD and SD signals.

- Focus assist function
  Enables easy and accurate focusing during shooting.

- User buttons added
  Enables you to switch camera settings instantly to suit the shooting conditions.

- External video signal input enabled
  Records composite video signals from an external source.

- GENLOCK input terminal
  Input B/B (Black Burst) or HD Tri-sync signals. SC phase and HD/SD H phase adjustments can be performed.

- Time code reader/generator
  The built-in time code reader/generator can be used to record the time code and user's bits.
Precautions for Proper Use

- Supply voltage
  Make sure that the power is between 11 V and 15 V DC. If the power voltage is too low, abnormal color and increased noise may occur.
- Allowable ambient temperature and humidity
  Be sure to use this device within the allowable temperature range of 0°C to 40°C and a relative humidity of 30% to 80%. Using this device at a temperature or humidity outside the allowable ranges could result not only in malfunction but the impact on the CCD elements could be serious as small white spots may be generated.
- Strong electromagnetic waves or magnetism
  Noise may appear in the picture or audio and the color or the colors may be incorrect if the camera is used near a radio or tele-vision transmitting antenna, in places where strong magnetic fields are generated by transformers, motors, etc., or near devices emitting radio waves, such as transceivers or cellular phones.
- Use of wireless microphone near the camera
  When a wireless microphone or wireless microphone tuner is used near the camera during recording, the tuner could pick up noise.
- Avoid using or placing this device in places;
  - subject to extreme heat or cold;
  - with excessive dirt or dust;
  - with high humidity or moisture;
  - subject to smoke or vapour such as near a cooking stove;
  - subject to strong vibrations or on an unstable surface;
  - do not leave this device for long hours in a parked car under direct sunlight or near room heating equipment;
  - do not leave this device where it is subject to radiation or X-rays or where corrosive gasses occur.
- Protect this device from falling splashed with water (especially when shooting in the rain).
- Protect this device from being wet when shooting on a beach.
- Protect this device against penetration of dust when using it in a place subject to sandy dust.
- Optimal performance of lens
  Due to the optimal performance of the lens, color divergence phenomena (magnification chromatic aberration) may occur at the periphery of the image.
- Vibration
  Noise may appear in the viewfinder when switching between the playback picture and the still picture. Use this device in an upright position.
  If placed on its side, heat release efficiency will deteriorate, adversely affecting the tape transport. Depending on circumstances the tape may also be damaged.
- Precautions for transportation
  Do not drop or hit this device against a hard object.
- Remove the videocassette before transporting this device.

Precautions for Use of Head Cleaning Tape

- Do not insert an object other than a videocassette in the cassette insertion slot. Be sure to close the cassette cover when this device is not to be used for a long period.
- Do not set the POWER switch to OFF or remove the power cable during recording or playback. Otherwise the tape may be damaged.
- The sensitivity level of the provided microphone is set lower than the reference input (–60 dBs) setting.
- When this device is not in use, be sure to set the POWER switch to OFF in order to reduce power consumption.
- Cleaning the body: Wipe body with a dry, soft cloth. To prevent deformation of the body, etc. and to avoid operation hazards, do not allow volatile liquids such as benzene and thinner to touch the body, and do not wipe it with a cloth soaked in such a liquid. When it is extremely dirty, soak the cloth in a solution of neutral detergent, wipe the body with it, and then use a clean cloth to remove the detergent.
- The camera may not show stable pictures in the period immediately after the power is turned on, but this is not a malfunction.
- A sound occurs when the built-in head cleaner that runs when you load or eject a videocassette operates, but this is not a malfunction.
- The LCD monitor and the viewfinder screen
  - The LCD monitor and the viewfinder screen are manufactured using high-precision technology. Black spots may appear on the LCD monitor and the viewfinder screen, or red, blue, green and/or white spots may not turn off. However, this is not a malfunction and these spots are not recorded on the tape.
  - If you use this device continuously for a long period of time, the characters displayed in the viewfinder may temporarily remain on the screen. This is not recorded on the tape. In addition, they are no longer displayed if you turn the power off and then on again.
  - If you use this device in a cold location, the images may appear to lag on the screen, but this is not a malfunction. This is not recorded on the tape.
  - Do not insert fingers or foreign objects into the cassette insertion slot as this may result in personal injury or damage to the mechanism.
- To prevent damage to the connectors, use this device with the connector covers on when you are not using the video/audio signal output connectors.

Routine and Periodical Maintenance

The GY-HD250/GY-HD251 incorporates precision mechanical parts, which will collect dirt, wear out and deteriorate as this device is used. After this device has been used for a long period even in a normal environment, the heads, drums and tape transport mechanisms also collect dirt. Especially, dust which penetrates the inside of the VTR section during outdoor use will promote the wear and deterioration of mechanical parts by causing poor contact between tape and heads or failing to maintain the video and audio quality at high levels. To prevent wear and deterioration, clean the mechanical parts using a head cleaning tape as routine maintenance. However, cleaning with a head cleaning tape alone is not enough for cleaning the entire tape transport mechanism, so it is also recommended to apply periodical maintenance (inspection) to prevent the sudden occurrence of failure. As the replacement, adjustment and servicing of parts require advanced skill and equipment, please consult the person in charge of professional video equipment at your nearest JVC-authorized service agent.

Head Cleaning

- To maintain beautiful pictures and sound, be sure to use a head cleaning tape to clean the head periodically.
- See “Precautions for Use of Head Cleaning Tape”. If head cleaning is not performed periodically, a type of mosaic noise called block noise may appear in the picture or sound may be interrupted.
- Please use cleaning tape produced by JVC. Do not use head cleaning tapes other than specified.
- See “Precautions for Use of Head Cleaning Tape” about how to use the head cleaning tape and precautions for use of the head cleaning tape.
- When dust adheres to the heads, the warning message “HEAD CLEANING REQUIRED!” is displayed on the LCD monitor, and in the viewfinder during playback and record checking using the RET button on the lens section.

Periodical Maintenance

Contents: Check or replace the following mechanical parts according to the running time.

- Drum assembly (including heads)
  - Optical performance of lens
  - Vibration
    Moisture may appear in the viewfinder when switching between the playback picture and the still picture. Use this device in an upright position.
  - Use this device in an upright position.
  - Do not drop or hit this device against a hard object.
  - Remove the videocassette before transporting this device.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Usage Time</th>
<th>500H</th>
<th>1000H</th>
<th>1500H</th>
<th>2000H</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Drums, rollers</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Belt gears</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drive parts</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Clean, check and adjust.
- Clean and check. Replace as required.
- Replace.

- The sensitivity level of the provided microphone is set lower than the reference input (–60 dBs) setting.
- Do not set the POWER switch to OFF or remove the power cable during recording or playback. Otherwise the tape may be damaged.
- The sensitivity level of the provided microphone is set lower than the reference input (–60 dBs) setting.
- When this device is not in use, be sure to set the POWER switch to OFF in order to reduce power consumption.
- Cleaning the body: Wipe body with a dry, soft cloth. To prevent deformation of the body, etc. and to avoid operation hazards, do not allow volatile liquids such as benzene and thinner to touch the body, and do not wipe it with a cloth soaked in such a liquid. When it is extremely dirty, soak the cloth in a solution of neutral detergent, wipe the body with it, and then use a clean cloth to remove the detergent.
- The camera may not show stable pictures in the period immediately after the power is turned on, but this is not a malfunction.
- A sound occurs when the built-in head cleaner that runs when you load or eject a videocassette operates, but this is not a malfunction.
- The LCD monitor and the viewfinder screen
  - The LCD monitor and the viewfinder screen are manufactured using high-precision technology. Black spots may appear on the LCD monitor and the viewfinder screen, or red, blue, green and/or white spots may not turn off. However, this is not a malfunction and these spots are not recorded on the tape.
  - If you use this device continuously for a long period of time, the characters displayed in the viewfinder may temporarily remain on the screen. This is not recorded on the tape. In addition, they are no longer displayed if you turn the power off and then on again.
  - If you use this device in a cold location, the images may appear to lag on the screen, but this is not a malfunction. This is not recorded on the tape.
  - Do not insert fingers or foreign objects into the cassette insertion slot as this may result in personal injury or damage to the mechanism.
- To prevent damage to the connectors, use this device with the connector covers on when you are not using the video/audio signal output connectors.

CAUTION

- Do not point the lens or viewfinder directly at the sun or other strong light source.
- Use the power on/off switch to power on/off the camera.
- When this device is not in use, be sure to set the POWER switch to OFF in order to reduce power consumption.
- Cleaning the body: Wipe body with a dry, soft cloth. To prevent deformation of the body, etc. and to avoid operation hazards, do not allow volatile liquids such as benzene and thinner to touch the body, and do not wipe it with a cloth soaked in such a liquid. When it is extremely dirty, soak the cloth in a solution of neutral detergent, wipe the body with it, and then use a clean cloth to remove the detergent.
- The camera may not show stable pictures in the period immediately after the power is turned on, but this is not a malfunction.
- A sound occurs when the built-in head cleaner that runs when you load or eject a videocassette operates, but this is not a malfunction.
- The LCD monitor and the viewfinder screen
  - The LCD monitor and the viewfinder screen are manufactured using high-precision technology. Black spots may appear on the LCD monitor and the viewfinder screen, or red, blue, green and/or white spots may not turn off. However, this is not a malfunction and these spots are not recorded on the tape.
  - If you use this device continuously for a long period of time, the characters displayed in the viewfinder may temporarily remain on the screen. This is not recorded on the tape. In addition, they are no longer displayed if you turn the power off and then on again.
  - If you use this device in a cold location, the images may appear to lag on the screen, but this is not a malfunction. This is not recorded on the tape.
  - Do not insert fingers or foreign objects into the cassette insertion slot as this may result in personal injury or damage to the mechanism.
- To prevent damage to the connectors, use this device with the connector covers on when you are not using the video/audio signal output connectors.

Precautions for Use of Head Cleaning Tape

Please use cleaning tape produced by JVC.

1. Insert the cleaning tape. Press the PLAY/STILL button after the cleaning tape is fully loaded.
   The tape runs for 10 seconds at a time in the PLAY mode. (The tape stops automatically and then this device enters the STOP mode.)
2. Do not use the tape more than four times at the most for each cleaning.

Use the following chart as a guide for periodical head cleaning.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Running Time</th>
<th>Low Temperature</th>
<th>Room Temperature</th>
<th>High Temperature</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 to 2 times every 5 hours</td>
<td>0°C to 10°C</td>
<td>5°C to 35°C</td>
<td>50°C to 60°C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note 1) When used in a low humidity environment, head cleaning should be performed at intervals half of those given in the chart above.

Note 2) If an M-DV80 tape is used immediately after head cleaning, the “HEAD CLEANING REQUIRED!” indicator may remain on. In this case, let the tape run as the indicator will turn off after the tape has run for a while.

Note 3) Use the cleaning tape in the room temperature according to the chart above.

Note 4) The cleaning tape case contains instructions for use of the cleaning tape. However, some of these instructions differ from the contents of this sheet. When using the cleaning tape, please follow the instructions of this sheet.

Note 5) If the “HEAD CLEANING REQUIRED!” does not disappear after repeated head cleanings, the recording tape may be abnormal. Avoid excessive repeated use of the head cleaning tape.
INTRODUCTION

Battery Pack to be Used

The GY-HD250/GY-HD251 can use any of the following batteries. (Factory setting)

- U model: Anton Bauer battery
- E model: IDX battery

Recommended batteries
- U model: Dionic 90 (Anton Bauer)
- E model: Endura-7 (IDX)

CAUTION

Use only the recommended batteries. If a heavy battery is used, the battery may fall out depending on the way the HD camera recorder is used.

Videocassette to be Used

- Use JVC’s videocassette tapes marked with the “△” symbol.
- Min DVD videocassette : M-DV63HD
- M-DV63PROHD
* Do not use M-DV80.
- Videocassettes cannot be used upside down.
- Avoid storing a videocassette with its tape not being completely wound, as this may damage the tape. Rewind it to the beginning before placing a cassette into storage.
- Store videocassettes in a place with little humidity and good ventilation where mould does not form.
- After a videocassette tape has been used repeatedly, it becomes unable to maintain full performance due to an increase in noise caused by dropout, etc. Do not continue to use a dirty or damaged tape, as this will reduce the rotary head life.
- Videocassette tapes with the “△” symbol are provided with a switch on the back to prevent accidental erasure.
- Slide the switch to SAVE to protect the required recording in the tape from being overwritten.
- To record on the tape, slide the switch to REC.

For recording and storing videotapes in the best condition

Observe the following instructions for the best recording and storage of videotapes.

- Take care of the conditions of handling videotapes. It is recommended that you record and store videotapes in the environment below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Recording (Up to 10 years)</th>
<th>Storage (Over 10 years)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Temperature</td>
<td>15°C to 25°C</td>
<td>15°C to 23°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Humidity</td>
<td>30% to 70%</td>
<td>40% to 55%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hourly temperature</td>
<td>Less than 10°C</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Humidity change</td>
<td>Less than 10%</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Do not leave the videotapes neglected for a long period. If videotapes are left wound for a long period of time, they may result in distortion of the tape. Also, it may cause tape-to-tape adhesion (known as blocking). It is recommended that videotapes be unspooled and rewound once a year for refreshing.
- When tapes are not in use, store them in cases and on end.
- Storage cases protect videotapes from humidity, dust, and ultraviolet light. Keep tapes in cases and do not store them lying flat. When housed in a horizontal position, pressure from other tapes can cause distortions and deformations of the tape edges.

- Do not leave the videotapes neglected for a long period. If videotapes are left wound for a long period of time, they may result in distortion of the tape. Also, it may cause tape-to-tape adhesion (known as blocking). It is recommended that videotapes be unspooled and rewound once a year for refreshing.

Condensation

- If this device has been cooled down in a cold place and is then carried to a warm place, the moisture contained in the warm air may adhere to the head drum or tape guides and be cooled into water droplets. This phenomenon is referred to as condensation (dew). When this occurs, the head drum and tape guides are covered with droplets allowing the tape to be stuck to them, leading to tape damage.
- Condensation occurs in the following cases:
  - When this device is suddenly moved from a cold place to a warm place.
  - When a room heater has just started or when this device is exposed directly to cold air from an air conditioner.
  - When this device is placed in a very humid place.

Do not leave the videocassette inserted when moving the camera under conditions where the temperature environment changes.

After moving this device, do not use until the internal parts have stabilized.

- “CONDENSATION ON DRUM” is displayed on the LCD monitor and in the viewfinder when condensation occurs in this device.

Characteristic CCD Phenomena

Smear and Blooming

Due to the physical structure of a CCD it is possible to induce vertical streaking (called ‘smear’) when shooting an extremely bright light source. Another effect is the expansion of light around a bright light or object (called ‘blooming’).

The CCD employed in this device is characterized by inducing very little smear or blooming. Nevertheless, please take note that smear or blooming may be induced when shooting a bright light source.

Moiré or Aliasing

Shooting stripes or fine patterns may cause a jagged effect or a banding in fine mesh patterns.

White dots

High temperatures can cause CCD sensor pixels to produce the effect of white dots in the image. This condition is conspicuous especially when gain is applied. This is a characteristic of the charged-coupled device (CCD). As far as possible, use this device under conditions where the temperature of the device does not increase.

WARNING 2017 CONDENSATION ON DRUM

Keep the power on until the warning message disappears.

- Pay attention to condensation even before the condensation indication appears.
- As condensation forms gradually, the condensation indication may not appear for the first 10-15 minutes after condensation has formed inside.
- In an extremely cold place, the condensation could freeze and turn into frost. In such a case, it takes an additional 2-3 hours for the frost to first melt into condensation and then to be dissolved.
- To prevent condensation
  - When moving this device from one place to another where the temperatures are greatly different, first remove the videocassette, place this device in a tightly sealed vinyl bag, and then move it to a new environment.
  - To ensure no condensation occurs, allow the temperature of this device in the bag to reach that of the new environment before using it.

<diagram>...
CONTROLS, INDICATORS AND CONNECTORS

ZOOM Lens

The zoom lens is not provided with the GY-HD250CHU or the GY-HD251CHE.

Th16 x 5.SBRMU

1. ZOOM mode knob
   - S: Servo zoom mode. Allows operation by the zoom servo control lever.

2. BACK FOCUS ring/fixing screw
   - For back focus adjustment only. Secure with the screw knob after adjustment. See “Back Focus Adjustment” on page 51.

3. Macro focusing ring (for close-up shooting)
   - By rotating this ring in the direction of the arrow, close-up shooting of very small objects becomes possible.
   - Normal focus adjustment and zooming are not available in the macro mode.
   - To shoot images in the macro mode, set the focus ring to the infinite position (+) and the zoom ring to the maximum wide-angle position. To adjust the focus of the macro image, rotate this ring in the direction of the arrow until the object is focused.

4. [LENS] Lens control connector
   - Connect 12-pin lens control cable from lens here.

5. Front tally lamp
   - This lamp lights up when the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 enters the record mode. It blinks during the transition to the record mode.
   - When the tape has run out, or the VTR enters the warning mode, it blinks quickly.
   - Use the FRONT TALLY item on the OTHERS[1/2] menu screen to select whether or not the lamp should light and the lighting pattern.

6. [VTR] VTR trigger button
   - To start/stop shooting.

7. [RET] Return video button
   - You can only monitor the return video signal from the VTR from the viewfinder, LCD monitor and video signal connector while this button is pressed.

8. Shoe
   - Makes it possible to mount separately sold lights and accessories.

9. Knob
   - This is the mounting knob for the microphone holder.

10. Microphone holder
    - Makes it possible to attach the provided microphone or a separately sold microphone.

11. Lens mounting ring/Lens lock lever
    - Hold the lens and use the lever to turn the ring anticlockwise to release lens.
    - To mount lens make sure the lens guide pin fits well, and then turn the ring clockwise until firm.

MEMO

If the speed becomes too fast, hunting may occur. To avoid the phenomena described above, perform adjustment again.

FILTER thread

Protect the lens with a clear filter or UV filter by screwing the filter onto the thread inside the lens hood from the front.

ZOOM servo control lever

To operate the servo zoom feature with this lever, set the ZOOM knob to “S”.

- Pressing the “W” section of this lever increases the angle of the lens for a wider shooting angle.
- Pressing the “T” section of this lever narrows the lens angle perspective for telephoto shots.
- Pushing harder changes the speed of the zoom.

IRIS mode switch

- A: Activates the auto iris feature.
- M: Allows manual iris control.

Momentary auto iris button

When the IRIS mode switch is at “M”, pushing this button activates the Auto Iris Function while it is held down only.

(S) IRIS speed adjusting control

For adjusting the iris operation speed.

MEMO

- When this switch is ON, a zebra pattern is imposed on the viewfinder or LCD areas having luminance levels in accordance with the menu settings made for the video signal. Zebra patterns are also displayed during color bar display when this switch is set to ON.
- The default value is 70% - 80%. The luminance level can be changed with the ZEBRA setting in the LCD/VT[1/4] menu screen.

- While this switch is pressed to the SKIN AREA side, the color tone areas specified with the SKIN COLOR ADJUST item on the ADVANCED PROCESS menu are indicated in the viewfinder. The switch returns to the OFF position when released.
- See “How to Use Skin Detail” on page 103.
- The Skin Detail color tone areas are not indicated while the color bar or VTR playback picture is shown in the viewfinder or on the LCD monitor.

(LW) Auto white balance button

When the WHT.BAL switch is at “M”, pushing this button calculates the white balance.

- It is not activated in preset, full auto shooting, full auto white balance and color bar modes.

- See “White Balance Adjustment” on page 52.

- It is not activated in preset, full auto shooting, full auto white balance and color bar modes.

- See “Attaching the Zoom Lens” on page 33.

- See “How to Use Skin Detail” on page 103.
- * The Skin Detail color tone areas are not indicated while the color bar or VTR playback picture is shown in the viewfinder or on the LCD monitor.

- See “Attaching the Zoom Lens” on page 33.

- See “Attaching the Zoom Lens” on page 33.

ZEBRA Zebra switch

When this switch is ON, a zebra pattern is imposed on the viewfinder or LCD areas having luminance levels in accordance with the menu settings made for the video signal. This pattern can be used as a reference for manual adjustment of the lens iris. Zebra patterns are also displayed during color bar display when this switch is set to ON.

- Pushing harder changes the speed of the zoom.
- Pushing this button activates the Auto Iris Function while it is held down only.
- Setting the ZOOM knob to “S”.
- Pushing harder changes the speed of the zoom.
- Pressing the “W” section of this lever increases the angle of the lens for a wider shooting angle.
- Pressing the “T” section of this lever narrows the lens angle perspective for telephoto shots.

- The default value is 70% - 80%. The luminance level can be changed with the ZEBRA setting in the LCD/VT[1/4] menu screen.

- See page 89.
- While this switch is pressed to the SKIN AREA side, the color tone areas specified with the SKIN COLOR ADJUST item on the ADVANCED PROCESS menu are indicated in the viewfinder. The switch returns to the OFF position when released.

- See “How to Use Skin Detail” on page 103.
- The Skin Detail color tone areas are not indicated while the color bar or VTR playback picture is shown in the viewfinder or on the LCD monitor.

- See “Attaching the Zoom Lens” on page 33.

- See “Attaching the Zoom Lens” on page 33.

MEMO

- If the speed becomes too fast, hunting may occur. To avoid the phenomena described above, perform adjustment again.

FILTER thread

Protect the lens with a clear filter or UV filter by screwing the filter onto the thread inside the lens hood from the front.

ZOOM servo control lever

To operate the servo zoom feature with this lever, set the ZOOM knob to “S”.

- Pressing the “W” section of this lever increases the angle of the lens for a wider shooting angle.
- Pressing the “T” section of this lever narrows the lens angle perspective for telephoto shots.
- Pushing harder changes the speed of the zoom.

IRIS mode switch

- A: Activates the auto iris feature.
- M: Allows manual iris control.

Momentary auto iris button

When the IRIS mode switch is at “M”, pushing this button activates the Auto Iris Function while it is held down only.

(S) IRIS speed adjusting control

For adjusting the iris operation speed.

MEMO

- If the speed becomes too fast, hunting may occur. To avoid the phenomena described above, perform adjustment again.

FILTER thread

Protect the lens with a clear filter or UV filter by screwing the filter onto the thread inside the lens hood from the front.

Filter can be used for various effects.

ZOOM servo connector

Connect an optional zoom servo unit here.

ZOOM mode knob

- S: Servo zoom mode. Allows operation by the zoom servo control lever.

BACK FOCUS ring/fixing screw

For back focus adjustment only. Secure with the screw knob after adjustment. See “Back Focus Adjustment” on page 51.

Macro focusing ring (for close-up shooting)

By rotating this ring in the direction of the arrow, close-up shooting of very small objects becomes possible.

Normal focus adjustment and zooming are not available in the macro mode.

To shoot images in the macro mode, set the focus ring to the infinite position (+) and the zoom ring to the maximum wide-angle position. To adjust the focus of the macro image, rotate this ring in the direction of the arrow until the object is focused.

CAUTION

- The back-focus knob is located close to the macro ring. Be careful not to mistake the back-focus knob for the macro ring.
- After the required operation, be sure to return the macro focusing ring to the normal position.

MEMO

- See “Back Focus Adjustment” on page 51.

- See “Attaching the Zoom Lens” on page 33.

- See “Attaching the Zoom Lens” on page 33.

Lens mounting ring/Lens lock lever

- Hold the lens and use the lever to turn the ring anticlockwise to release lens.

- To mount lens make sure the lens guide pin fits well, and then turn the ring clockwise until firm.

- See “Attaching the Zoom Lens” on page 33.

- See “Attaching the Zoom Lens” on page 33.
**CONTROLS, INDICATORS AND CONNECTORS**

**Rear Section**

1. **Shoulder belt hooks**
   - Allows you to attach a separately sold shoulder belt.

2. **LCD monitor**
   - Shows a color camera image or the VTR playback picture.
   - It is also used for displaying the following:
     - Menu Setting screens
     - Characters showing the settings for the GY-HD250/GY-HD251
     - Date and time and time code
     - Audio level meter
     - Warning indications, etc.
     - See page 22.

3. **Back tally lamp**
   - This lamp lights up when the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 enters the record mode. It blinks during the transition to the record mode.
   - When the tape has run out, or the VTR enters the warning mode, it blinks quickly.
   - Use the BACK TALLY item on the OTHERS[1/2] menu screen to select whether or not the lamp should light and the lighting pattern.
   - See page 96.

4. **[PHONES] Earphone jack**
   - This is a stereo mini-jack for connecting an earphone for audio monitoring. Plug in an earphone or headphone with a 3.5 mm diameter plug. The earphone can also be used to monitor alarm tones in accordance with the circumstances.
   - The audio channel to be output is selected with the AUDIO MONITOR item on the AUDIO/MIC[2/2] menu screen and MONITOR SELECT switch on page 19.
   - The audio output level is adjusted with the Audio monitor volume control on page 14.

**MEMO**

- The volume of the alarm sound is set with the ALARM VR LEVEL item on the OTHERS[1/2] menu screen.
- When using a stereotype jack and stereo sound should be output, the following setting should be performed.
  - Set the MONITOR SELECT switch on page 19 to BOTH.
  - Set the AUDIO MONITOR item on the AUDIO/MIC[2/2] menu screen to STEREO.

**LCD Door**

1. **[LCD BRIGHT +/–] LCD brightness +/- button**
   - This button is for adjusting the brightness of the LCD monitor.
   - Pushing the button in the + direction makes the monitor brighter.
   - Pushing the button in the – direction makes the monitor darker.
   - Pushing the +/- buttons simultaneously returns the setting to the standard setting.

2. **[CAM/VTR] Camera/VTR mode switch button**
   - Each time you press this button, the mode switches between camera mode and VTR mode.
   - When you do this, the VTR indicator on page 19 displays the following statuses.
   - When the mode is being switched: Flashing
   - In VTR mode: Lit
   - In camera mode: Off
   - Select the Camera mode to record the camera image.
   - Select the VTR mode to playback VTR or to input the HDV/DV signal from the IEEE1394 connector on page 16.
   - When the power is turned on, the mode becomes the Camera mode.

3. **[TC GENE.] Time code generator setting switch**
   - Switch for setting the time code generator to preset mode or regeneration mode.
   - It is also used to select the time code run mode when the preset mode is selected.
   - FREE : The preset mode is selected, and the time code run mode becomes the FREE run mode.
   - REC : The preset mode is selected, and the time code run mode becomes the REC run mode.
   - REGEN : Regeneration mode, in which this device reads existing time codes on the tape and records time codes in continuation of the existing ones. Set to this position when you want to add additional time codes to time codes already recorded on the tape.

**MEMO**

- See page 96.
- See page 44.
- See "TC/UB/CLOCK Menu Screen” on page 93.

- This switch is enabled when TCG SOURCE on the TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen is set to INTERNAL.
- Preset of time code and user’s bits is performed on the TC/UB/CLOCK menu.
- See page 44.
- Set the AUDIO MONITOR item on the AUDIO/MIC[2/2] menu screen to STEREO.
- See page 19.
- Set the MONITOR SELECT switch on page 19 to BOTH.
- Set the AUDIO MONITOR item on the AUDIO/MIC[2/2] menu screen to STEREO.
CONTROLS, INDICATORS AND CONNECTORS

Right Side Section

Monitoring speaker (Cheek pad)
- In the Camera mode, the input sound can be EE monitored. In the VTR mode, the speaker outputs the VTR playback sound. In the VTR mode, the HDV/DV input sound can be EE monitored.
- The volume to be output is selected with the MONITOR SELECT switch on page 19.
- The sound level is adjusted with the MONITOR sound level volume. This speaker also outputs various warning sounds superimposed on other sound.

Cheek pad set screw
- Screw for adjusting the height of the cheek pad.

MONITOR) Audio monitor volume control
- Adjusts the volume of the monitoring loudspeaker and earphone.

VF BRIGHT) Viewfinder brightness adjustment
- To adjust the brightness of the viewfinder.
- #/# See page 50.

[PEAKING) Contour adjustment
- To adjust the contours of the LCD monitor and viewfinder.
- When the Focus Assist function is running, this control does not operate.
- #/# See page 50.

[FOCUS ASSIST) Focus assist button
- When you press this button during shooting, the area of focus is displayed in blue, red or green, making it easy to focus accurately.

MEMO
- When [FOCUS ASSIST] on the LCD/VF[14] menu screen is set to ACCU-FOCUS and this button is pressed, ACCU-FOCUS functions with FOCUS ASSIST. This makes depth of field shallower, making it easier to focus.
- This button has the same function as the [FOCUS ASSIST] button in the Top Section.

Clamp
- Attach the cable from the viewfinder here.

USER[1/2/3] User buttons
- You can assign camera functions to the USER1 - 3 buttons.
- Use them to switch shooting conditions depending upon the subject.
- Set them using the USER1 - 3 items in the SWITCH MODE menu screen.
- #/# See page 86.
- Use this button to preset the time code.
- #/# See page 46.

MEMO
- The USER buttons work together with the menu settings.
- When a menu screen is being displayed, they also function as menu operation buttons.
- #/# See "Setting Menu Screens" on page 75.

Shutter/Menudial
- Every time this dial is pressed while in the normal screen mode (when the menu screen is not displayed), the shutter speed switches between on/off.
- When this dial is turned 1 click up or down in the normal screen mode, the shutter speed indicator is shown for about 3 seconds on the LCD monitor or in the viewfinder. The shutter speed is changed when this dial is turned while the shutter speed indicator is shown.
- #/# See page 86.
- When this dial turned upward or downward while the menu screen is displayed, the cursor ( ) also moves upward or downward to allow selection of items in the menu. To change the setting value of the item, press this dial. When the setting value starts blinking, turn this dial upward or downward to change the setting.
- #/# See "Setting Menu Screens" on page 75.

ND Filter) ND filter switch
- Switches the built-in ND filter.
- OFF : Turns the filter OFF (FILTER OFF)
- 1 : Cuts the light intensity to approximately 1/4. (1/4ND)
- 2 : Cuts the light intensity to approximately 1/16. (1/16ND)
- When you change this switch, the type of the new ND filter is displayed in the LCD monitor or viewfinder.

CAUTION
- If you switch the ND filter while shooting is in progress, the picture may be distorted or noise may occur in the audio.
- #/# See "Camera Settings" on page 55.

[STATUS) Status/Menu button
- Pressing this button in the normal screen mode (condition in which the menu screen is not shown) displays a status screen in the viewfinder or on the LCD monitor.
- The displayed status screen changes each time the button is pressed.
- #/# See "Status Screens" on page 22.
- Pressing this button for more than 1 second in the normal screen mode displays the menu screen in the viewfinder or on the LCD monitor.
- #/# See "Setting Menu Screens" on page 75.

Sensitivity selector switch
- Electronically boosts the light sensitivity when there is insufficient illumination on the subject.
- The boosting level differs depending on the switch position as follows:
  (Factory presets)
- L : 0 dB (no boosting is applied)
- M : 9 dB (boosted to approximately 3 times the original)
- H : 18 dB (boosted to approximately 6 times the original)
- The boosting level for each switch position can be changed with the SWITCH MODE menu screen.
- #/# See page 86.
- The more the boosting level is increased, the more the resulting image will be noisy.
- When the FULL AUTO switch on page 19 is "ON", this is fixed at "ALC".

White balance switch
- Three white balance modes are selectable with this switch.
- B : Switch into white balance mode memorized in B. If white balance is performed in the switch position, it will be memorized into B.
- A : Switch into white balance mode memorized in A. If white balance is performed with this switch in this position, it will be memorized into A.
- PRST : Switch into white balance mode (3200K or (PRRESET) 5600K) set in PRESET TEMP. item on the CAMERA OPERATION menu screen.
- #/# See page 80.
- FAW (Full Auto White Balance) mode can be set to A, B or PRESET with the SWITCH MODE menu screen.
- #/# See page 86.
- In the FAW mode, video color temperatures are constantly sampled for automatic adjustment to a proper white balance.
- When the FULL AUTO switch on page 19 is "ON", this is fixed at "FAW".

MEMO
- Fine-tune red and blue to match the white adjusted in auto white balance in WHITE PAINT<R>/<B> on the WHITE BALANCE menu screen. (Available only when this switch is set to A or B.)
- #/# See "WHITE BALANCE Menu Screen" on page 85.

[POWER) Power ON/OFF switch
- Switch that turns the power ON/OFF.
- When the power is OFF, "POFF" is displayed in the LCD monitor or viewfinder.
- # Wait at least 5 seconds if you need to turn the power on again.

(REC) REC trigger button (start/stop recording)
- Start and stop recording using this button.
- (This works together with the REC trigger button on the top and the lens VTR trigger button.)
- When "SPLIT" is set for the 1394 REC TRIGGER item on the OTHERS[2/2] menu screen, this button becomes the start/stop recording button for an external device.
- #/# See page 97.

[CH-1/CH-2] Audio level controls and AUTO LED
- Allow you to adjust the audio level for the CH-1 and CH-2 audio channels.
- To use these controls, set the CH-1/CH-2 AUDIO SELECT switch on page 13 to "MANU".
- When the FULL AUTO switch on page 19 or the CH-1/CH-2 AUDIO SELECT switch on page 13 is set to "AUTO", "AUTO" LED lights. (The audio level controls do not work.)

[HDV/DV LED]
- In camera mode, this light according to the setting for the video format being shot.
- In VTR mode, this light according to the video format being recorded on tape or the IEEE1394 input video format.
- HDV : Lights when the format is HDV.
- DV : Lights when the format is DV.
- HDV/DV : Turns off when the format is 1080i.

MEMO
- During a system error, HDV/DV flash alternately.
- #/# See page 108.
- Select whether or not to have this light in the FORMAT LED item on the OTHERS[1/2] menu screen.
- #/# See page 96.

LCD door lock and release knob
- To open the LCD door, move this knob on the direction toward the rear section.

LCD door
- LCD monitor door.
- The LCD monitor is located on the inner side of the door.
- The LCD monitor can be viewed when this door is opened.
- The door can be turned to change the orientation of the LCD monitor, and it can be rotated so that it can be accommodated in the main body of the camera.
- #/# See page 50.
### Left Side Section

#### Viewfinder connector (6-pin)
- Connect the cable from the viewfinder here.
  - Set the image format for this terminal in VF SIGNAL on the LCD/VF[4/4] menu screen. See page 92.

#### (CH-2 INPUT) CH-2 audio input connector selector switch
- Selects the CH-2 audio input connector.
  - INPUT1: Uses the audio from the INPUT1 connector.
  - INPUT2: Uses the audio from the INPUT2 connector.

MEMO
- The audio from the INPUT1 connector is also input into CH-1 regardless of the setting.

#### [AUDIO INPUT] Audio input signal selector switch
- This switch is used to select the input sound signal from INPUT1 or INPUT2 connector.
  - LINE: Set to this position when connected to audio equipment, etc. The reference input level is +4 dB.
  - MIC: Set to this position when the dynamic microphone is connected.
  - MIC+48V: Set to this position when a microphone requiring +48 V power supply (phantom microphone, etc.) is connected.

CAUTION
- When connecting a component that does not require +48 V power supply, make sure that the switch is not set to MIC+48V before the component is connected.

MEMO
- You can select the normal input level for MIC and MIC+48V in the INPUT1, 2 MIC REF item on the AUDIO/MIC[1/2] menu screen. See page 87.

#### [INPUT1/INPUT2] INPUT1/INPUT2 audio input connectors
- These are audio input connectors for connecting to an external audio device or microphone.
  - Set the [AUDIO INPUT] switch according to the device to be connected.
  - Set the CH-2 audio input connector using the [CH-2 INPUT] switch.
- The CH-2 audio from the set connector is recorded.
- Shoulder pad slide button
  - Button to adjust the position of the shoulder pad. When you press this button, you can move the position of the shoulder pad forward or backward.
- Shoulder pad
  - Sliding the EJECT switch on page 18 located on the top section opens this cover to allow insertion or removal of the videocassette.

CAUTION
- To prevent foreign objects from entering the internal parts of the VTR unit, do not leave this device with the cover open for extended periods of time.

#### [VIDEO OUT] Video output terminal (RCA)
- This is a terminal for composite video signal output.
  - Select whether or not to output a signal with setup in SET UP on the VIDEO FORMAT[2/2] menu screen. (Only for FM model)

#### [AUDI0 OUTPUT CH-1/CH-2] Audio output connector (RCA)
- Output connector for audio signals.
  - Outputs the input audio signal in the Camera mode.
  - Outputs the playback audio signal in the VTR mode.
  - When a HDV/DV signal (IEEE1394) is input, the EI sound of the input audio signal is output in the VTR mode.

MEMO
- Alarm sound is not output.

#### [IEEE1394] IEEE1394 connector (6-pin)
- Using an IEEE1394 cable (optional), a digital video component with IEEE1394 connector can be connected here.
  - See “Connecting the IEEE1394 Cable” on page 64.
  - See “HDC/DV Dubbing” on page 68.

CAUTION
- When connecting the IEEE1394 cable, confirm that the connector is facing the right direction before inserting. See page 64.

MEMO
- Put the covers on the connectors when you are not using them.

#### [STUDIO] Studio terminal (Round 10-pin)
- Connect the studio cable from the KA-HD250 Studio Kit (sold separately). Connect the KA-HD250 to use this device as a studio camera.
- For details, refer to the KA-HD250 INSTRUCTION MANUAL.

#### [REMOTE] REMOTE terminal (6-pin)
- Some functions of this camera can be controlled externally.
  - Connect to a remote control unit (RM-LP55/RM-LP57).
  - See “Connect a Remote Control Unit (RM-LP55/RM-LP57)” on page 71.

#### [GENLOCK/AUX IN] GENLOCK/AUX IN terminal (BNC)
- Input synchronization signals in this terminal when externally synchronizing camera images or playback images.
- Synchronization signal, BB (Black Burst) signal of SD or Tri sync signal of HD
- Input composite video signals to record images from an external device with this device.
  - Select the signal to input with the [GENLOCK/AUX IN] switch.
  - See “Using GENLOCK Functions” on page 66.
  - See “Recording Composite Video Signals from an External Device” on page 65.

#### [HD/SD-SDI] HD/SD-SDI terminal (BNC)
- Outputs HD/SD-SDI (Serial Digital Interface) signals. Outputs embedded audio signals as digital audio.
  - The sampling frequency for embedded audio is 48 kHz.
  - In addition, the time code for the built-in time code generator and playback time code are output.
  - See pages 20 and 21 for the signals that are enabled.

MEMO
- Set whether or not to output SDI signals from this terminal in HD/SD-SDI OUT of the VIDEO FORMAT[2/2] menu screen.

#### [Y] Component Y signal output terminal (BNC)
- Outputs Y signal of component when the [PE/PR/TC] switch is set to PE/PR.

#### [Ps/TC] Component Ps signal output terminal (BNC)
- Outputs Ps signal of component when the [Ps/Pr/TC] switch is set to Ps/Pr.
  - Outputs time code when the [Ps/Pr/TC] switch is set to TC.
  - Enter the LTC time code to slave-lock this device’s time code generator with an external time code generator.

MEMO
- Set TCG SOURCE on the TC/UB/CLOCK Menu screen to EXTERNAL to input external time codes.
  - See “Synchronize with an External Time Code Generator” on page 49.

#### [Ps/TC] Component Ps signal output terminal (BNC)
- Outputs Ps signal of component when the [Ps/Pr/TC] switch is set to Ps/Pr.
  - Outputs the LTC time code of the built-in time code generator when the [Ps/Pr/TC] switch is set to TC.

MEMO
- Set the [Y/Pr/Pe] terminal (R G B) output image signal to RGB or Y/C video signals in OUTPUT TER.[D] on the VIDEO FORMAT[2/2] menu screen. (Only for DV format)
  - See “OUTPUT TERMINAL” on page 79.
CONTROLS, INDICATORS AND CONNECTORS

Top Section

1 Viewfinder Displays the camera image and the playback picture.

MEMO
- Set the image format for the viewfinder to RGB, component, composite, or Y signal in VF SIGNAL on the LCD/VF[4/4] menu screen. See page 52.

2 Eyepiece Ensures that ambient light does not reach the viewfinder screen or falls into the eye of the cameraman.

MEMO
- You can adjust the focus by turning this ring.
- You can adjust the position of the eyepiece forward or backward by loosening this ring.
- You can adjust the position of the viewfinder left or right by turning this ring.
- Attach the microphone cable here.

3 Battery ASSIST Focus assist button
- When you press this button during shooting, the area of focus is displayed in blue, red or green, making it easy to focus accurately.
- When FOCUS ASSIST on the LCD/VF[1/4] menu screen is set to ACCU-FOCUS and this button is pressed, ACCU FOCUS functions with FOCUS ASSIST. This makes depth of field shallower, making it easier to focus.
- This button has the same function as the FOCUS ASSIST button in the Right Side Section.

4 [REC] REC trigger button (start/stop recording)
- Start and stop recording using this button.
- This works together with the REC trigger button on the right panel and the lens VTR trigger button.

5 [REC LOCK] REC LOCK switch
- Slide this switch in the direction of the arrow to lock the [REC] trigger button. Use this to prevent unwanted recording.
- (The REC trigger button on the right panel and the lens VTR trigger button are not locked.)

6 SD memory card cover
- When you open this cover, you can insert and remove the SD memory card.
- You can initialize (format) an SD memory card.
- See “Inserting an SD Memory Card” on page 34.

7 [FF] Fast forward button
- Press this button to fast forward the tape.
- Pressing this button in the stop or rewind mode initiates forward search.
- When an SD memory card is loaded during still picture playback and search mode, press this button to return to the normal playback mode.
- If the auto tracking is active at the moment the playback starts, press this button briefly to change the display mode for the LCD screen as follows.

- Only image displayed
- Characters shown enlarged
- Image and characters displayed

MEMO
- The gain changes continuously until it reaches the maximum ALC MAX setting, and the shutter speed also changes continuously.
- When you release FAS mode, all of the settings return to their previous modes.
- Auto iris mode operates even if the lens irs mode switch is set to the manual position.
- The gain changes continuously until it reaches the maximum ALC MAX setting, and the shutter speed also changes continuously.
- When you release FAS mode, all of the settings return to their previous modes.

8 [REW] Rewind button
- Press this button to rewind the tape.
- Pressing this button in the stop or fast forward mode initiates the rewind mode.
- Pressing this button during playback, still picture playback or forward search initiates reverse search.
- Press to start playback. Press to enter the still picture mode during playback, in the stop mode or in the search mode.

9 [PLAY/STILL] Play/still button
- Depending on the ambient temperature, if still image playback mode continues for between 30 seconds and 3 minutes, it stops automatically. (Tape protect mode)

10 SD memory card cover
- When a still image is being played back or forward search initiates reverse search.

11 [EJECT] Eject switch and LED
- Slide this switch to the side to insert or eject a video cassette.
- The LED lights while ejecting is in progress.

12 [FOCUS ASSIST] Focus assist button
- When FOCUS ASSIST on the LCD/VF[1/4] menu screen is set to ACCU-FOCUS and this button is pressed, ACCU FOCUS functions with FOCUS ASSIST. This makes depth of field shallower, making it easier to focus.
- This button has the same function as the FOCUS ASSIST button in the Right Side Section.

CAUTION
- When the power is turned on while the camera is in the FAS mode, it takes about 10 seconds before the automatic adjustment of FAS is completed.
- Be sure to move switches all the way. Do not leave a switch stopped in a midway position. Noise will be generated and operation irregularities will occur.

13 [DISPLAY] Display button
- When LCD+VF in the LCD/VF[4/4] menu display is set to OFF, press the DISPLAY button for 2 seconds to switch between the LCD screen and the viewfinder screen.
- When LCD+VF in the LCD/VF[4/4] menu display is set to ON, press the DISPLAY button for 2 seconds to switch the LCD screen ON and OFF. Press the DISPLAY button briefly to change the display mode for the LCD screen as follows.

- Only image displayed
- Image and characters displayed

MEMO
- See “Magnified Status Indications on the LCD Monitor” on page 29.

14 [VTR] VTR indicator
- This indicator lights when the camera is in the VTR mode. When LCD+VF in the LCD/VF[4/4] menu display is set to OFF, press the DISPLAY button for 2 seconds to switch between the LCD screen and the viewfinder screen.
- When LCD+VF in the LCD/VF[4/4] menu display is set to ON, press the DISPLAY button for 2 seconds to switch the LCD screen ON and OFF. Press the DISPLAY button briefly to change the display mode for the LCD screen as follows.

- Only image displayed
- Characters shown enlarged
- Image and characters displayed

MEMO
- When the STOP button is pressed in the Camera mode to set the VTR operation mode indicator to Indicate STOP, playback operations become possible.

15 [FULL AUTO] Full auto shooting (FAS) switch
- This is the ON/OFF switch for FAS mode.
- When FAS mode, “FAS” is displayed on the LCD monitor or the viewfinder.
- FAS mode works together with the auto iris and auto level control (ALC) modes and automatically adjusts to the optimal video signal level and white balance.
- You can select automatic adjustment mode or manual adjustment mode for auto recording level.
- Even if there are color bars, this automatically sets to camera video.
- Auto iris mode operates even if the lens irs mode switch is set to the manual position.
- The gain changes continuously until it reaches the maximum ALC MAX setting, and the shutter speed also changes continuously.
- When you release FAS mode, all of the settings return to their previous modes.

16 [STOP] Stop button
- Press to enter the stop mode.

17 [MONITOR SELECT] Audio monitor selector switch
- This switch is used to select the monitor sound output and playback sound output from the monitoring speaker.
- When FOCUS ASSIST on the LCD/VF[1/4] menu screen is set to ACCU-FOCUS and this button is pressed, ACCU FOCUS functions with FOCUS ASSIST. This makes depth of field shallower, making it easier to focus.
- This button has the same function as the FOCUS ASSIST button in the Right Side Section.

MEMO
- [FULL AUTO] Full auto shooting (FAS) switch
- This is the ON/OFF switch for FAS mode.
- When FAS mode, “FAS” is displayed on the LCD monitor or the viewfinder.
- FAS mode works together with the auto iris and auto level control (ALC) modes and automatically adjusts to the optimal video signal level and white balance.
- You can select automatic adjustment mode or manual adjustment mode for audio recording level.
- Even if there are color bars, this automatically sets to camera video.
- Auto iris mode operates even if the lens irs mode switch is set to the manual position.
- The gain changes continuously until it reaches the maximum ALC MAX setting, and the shutter speed also changes continuously.
- When you release FAS mode, all of the settings return to their previous modes.
Recording and Image Output Formats

This device supports HDV and DV image formats, as well as images input from external devices. This device also has various output terminals. (Composite, analog component, HD/SD-SDI, IEEE1394)

Select analog component, RGB or Y/C signals for images from the Y/PB/PR terminal in DV format. (Select in OUTPUT TERM. [DV] on the VIDEO FORMAT[2/2] menu screen)

During recording and playback, image formats from each of the output terminals are as shown in the table below.

When recording camera images

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recording (Shooting)</th>
<th>Rec on Tape</th>
<th>IEEE 1394 Out</th>
<th>Component / SDI Out</th>
<th>RGB Out</th>
<th>Y/C Out</th>
<th>Composite Out</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HD</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDV-HD60P</td>
<td>720/60p</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>480/60i</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDV-HD30P</td>
<td>720/30p</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>480/30i</td>
<td>480/30i</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDV-HD50P</td>
<td>720/50p</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>576/50i</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDV-HD25P</td>
<td>720/25p</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>576/30p</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDV-HD24P</td>
<td>720/24p</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>576/30p</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U model only</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DV-60I</td>
<td>480/60i</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>480/60i</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DV-24P</td>
<td>480/24p</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>480/24p</td>
<td>480/24p</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DV-25P</td>
<td>576/50i</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>576/50i</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DV-50I</td>
<td>576/50i</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>576/50i</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E model only</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DV-60I</td>
<td>480/60i</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>480/60i</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DV-24P</td>
<td>480/24p</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>480/24p</td>
<td>480/24p</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When Recording HDV or DV Images from the IEEE1394 Terminal

When Recording HDV or DV Images from the IEEE1394 Terminal

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recording (IEEE1394 In)</th>
<th>Rec on Tape</th>
<th>Component / SDI Out</th>
<th>RGB Out</th>
<th>Y/C Out</th>
<th>Composite Out</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HDV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDV-HD60P</td>
<td>720/60p</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>480/60i</td>
<td>480/60i</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDV-HD30P</td>
<td>720/30p</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>480/30i</td>
<td>480/30i</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDV-HD50P</td>
<td>720/50p</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>576/50i</td>
<td>576/50i</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDV-HD25P</td>
<td>720/25p</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>576/30p</td>
<td>576/30p</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDV-HD24P</td>
<td>720/24p</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>576/30p</td>
<td>576/30p</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U model only</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DV-60I</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DV-60I</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E model only</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DV-60I</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When Recording Composite Images from the AUX IN Terminal

When Recording Composite Images from the AUX IN Terminal

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recording (Composite In)</th>
<th>Rec on Tape</th>
<th>IEEE 1394 Out</th>
<th>Component/SDI Out (EE Out)</th>
<th>RGB Out</th>
<th>Y/C Out</th>
<th>Composite Out</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HD</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SD</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SD</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes about the table

- (Shaded): Indicates the setting item in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen.
- N/A: Terminal is not available.
- q: Same format as the left.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.

MEMO

Synchronize the setting for FRAME RATE in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen with the frame rate of the IEEE1394 input signal.
Indications on the LCD Monitor and in the Viewfinder

In addition to showing the EE image and the playback picture, the LCD monitor and viewfinder are also used for the following character displays.

To show character displays on the LCD monitor, press the DISPLAY button briefly.

To show characters on the LCD monitor, press the DISPLAY button briefly.

**Status Screens (screens for checking the current camera settings)**

**Auto white display (only displayed in the Camera mode)**

**Menu setting screens**

**Alarm message display**

**Safety zone display (only displayed in the Camera mode)**

**MEMO**

When ANALOG OUT CHAR. on the OTHERS[1/2] menu screen is ON, characters are also shown on images from the Y/PB/PR OUT and VIDEO OUT terminals.

Characters are also shown on images from the HD/SD-SDI OUT terminal when the SDI OUT CHAR. is ON.

**Status Screens**

Press the STATUS button while normal screen is displayed to show one of the status screens.

**Status Screens in the Camera Mode**

**Event Indication**

When the Gain or Shutter Speed is changed manually, the setting condition is displayed for about 3 seconds at the time the change is made.

- Set the shutter display method to seconds or angle in SHUTTER DISP. on the LCD/VF[3/4] menu screen. (Only when frame rate is 24p or 25p mode)

**Setting Status Contents of Indications**

- **Gain value was changed**
- **Gain value reached the ALC**
- **Full AUTO was turned ON/OFF**
- **ZEBRA was turned ON/OFF**
- **Shutter speed value was changed**
- **Variable shutter speed value was changed**
- **White balance value was changed**
- **FILTER value was changed**
- **AE LEVEL value was changed**
- **BLACK gain value was changed**
- **PRESET TEMP. value was changed**
- **HEADER REC is running**
- **FOCUS ASSIST was turned ON/OFF**
- **Time code was set to zero reset**
- **A-REC command was sent from the IEEE1394 connector**

**External Image Input Mode (AUX IN)**
### Indications on the LCD Monitor and in the Viewfinder (Cont’d)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Status</th>
<th>Contents of Indications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FF/REW button was pressed in CAMERA mode</td>
<td>SWITCH TO VTR MODE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RECORD trigger button was pressed when 1080i CAMERA is in the VIDEO FORMAT[1/2] menu screen was set to ON</td>
<td>1080i REC INVALID</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Display**: See "FILE MANAGE Menu Screen" on pages 100-102.
- **Display**: See "Warnings and Responses" on page 106.

#### Other Displays

1. The range for the shutter speed differs depending on the video format setting. See page 86.
2. Displayed if functions were assigned to the USER1 - 3 buttons. See page 86.
3. Displayed when the [WHT.BAL] white balance selector switch  on page 15 is set to PRST (PRESET).
4. "*" depends on the video format.

#### STATUS 1

In addition to the information on the STATUS 0 screen, this screen displays the following items.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Contents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>VTR mode indication</td>
<td>STBY: In record standby mode (record-pause mode)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>REC: During recording</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>PLAY: During playback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>FF: During fast forward</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>REV: During rewinding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STL: During still picture playback mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>FW: During playback in forward direction (FW01: About 2 speed, FW02: About 5 speed, FW03: About 10 speed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>REV: During playback in reverse direction (REV01: About 2 speed, REV02: About 5 speed, REV03: About 10 speed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STOP: Stop mode (Tape protect mode)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>EJECT: Cassette being ejected</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Indication of date and time

- Indicates the date and time.
- Whether or not the date and time should be displayed as well as the display style are set on the TIME/DATE menu.

#### LCD BRIGHT indication

- When the brightness of the monitor screen is adjusted with the LCD BRIGHT button, the date and time indications and the VTR mode indication are turned off and the LCD BRIGHT indicator is displayed.
- Example: BRIGHT = ++ + + + + + + |
- Numeric value: Any of –5, –4, –3, –2, –1, 0, +1, +2, +3, +4, +5.

#### Indication of Black operation

- B: Displayed when the black stretch or black compress settings are other than NORMAL.

#### Indication of skin tone detail color operation

- S: Displayed when the shutter speed is a setting other than the default setting.

#### Indication of Iris level operation

- I: Displayed when the Iris level operation is other than NORMAL.

#### Indication of FAW operation

- FAW: Indicated when Full Auto White Balance is ON.

#### Display of control functions

- SKIN AREA: Blinks while the skin detail color area is displayed.
- ALC: Indicated when the ALC function alone is ON.
- FAS: Displayed when the Full Auto Shooting function is ON.
- S: Displayed when the shutter speed is a setting other than the default setting.
- FOCUS: Displayed when the Focus Assist function is ON.
- DR-HD100 Oper: When a DR-HD100 (HDD unit by FOCUS enhancements) is connected, its operation status is displayed.
- AUX: Displayed when in external image input mode (AUX IN mode).

#### Indication of various function operations

- Displayed when in external image input mode (AUX IN mode).

#### Gain operation indication

- Indicates gain value when gain is other modes than 0 dB and ALC.

#### Indication of DR-HD100 Operation

- Displays when DR-HD100 is connected (displays white).
- Recording with DR-HD100 (displays red).
- For details, refer to the DR-HD100 INSTRUCTION MANUAL.

#### Indication of DR-HD100 Operation

- Displays when the DR-HD100 is connected.
- DR-HD100 is connected (displays white).
- Recording with DR-HD100 (displays red).

#### Indication of the remaining tape time

- The remaining tape indication is to be regarded only as a guide.
- When this device is used at low temperatures, it may take a while before the indication of the remaining tape time appears.

#### Indication of Black operation

- B: Displayed when the black stretch or black compress settings are other than NORMAL.

#### Indication of skin tone detail color operation

- S: Displayed when the shutter speed is a setting other than the default setting.

#### Indication of Iris level operation

- I: Displayed when the Iris level operation is other than NORMAL.

#### Indication of various function operations

- SKIN AREA: Blinks while the skin detail color area is displayed.
- ALC: Indicated when the ALC function alone is ON.
- FAS: Displayed when the Full Auto Shooting function is ON.
- S: Displayed when the shutter speed is a setting other than the default setting.
- FOCUS: Displayed when the Focus Assist function is ON.
- DR-HD100 Oper: When a DR-HD100 (HDD unit by FOCUS enhancements) is connected, its operation status is displayed.
- AUX: Displayed when in external image input mode (AUX IN mode).
### Indications on the LCD Monitor and in the Viewfinder (Cont’d)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Contents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Audio sampling frequency indication</td>
<td>32 K : Indicated when the AUDIO MODE item on the AUDIO/MIC[1/2] menu screen is set to 32 K. (Audio is recorded with 12-bit, 32 kHz sampling.)&lt;br&gt;48 K : Indicated when the AUDIO MODE item on the AUDIO/MIC[1/2] menu screen is set to 48 K. (Audio is recorded with 16-bit, 48 kHz sampling.) When HDV format is set, 48K is displayed.&lt;br&gt;X: See page 87. Whether or not to display this item is set with the AUDIO item on the LCD/VF[3/4] menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Audio level meter indication</td>
<td>Displays the CH-1, CH-2 audio level meters.&lt;br&gt;X: See page 91. Whether or not to display this item is set with the AUDIO item on the LCD/VF[3/4] menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Standard audio level indication</td>
<td>The level at which audio is recorded on the tape is indicated by &quot;+&quot;.&lt;br&gt;–20 dB, –12 dB&lt;br&gt;X: See &quot;AUDIO REF.LEVEL&quot; on page 87.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Iris indicator display</td>
<td>M: Iris set higher than normal&lt;br&gt;b: Iris set to normal&lt;br&gt;N: Iris set lower than normal&lt;br&gt;The indication can be switched ON/OFF with the F.NO/IRIS IND. item on the LCD/VF[1/4] menu screen.&lt;br&gt;X: See page 89.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Iris F-value indication</td>
<td>Indicates the F-number of the connected lens.&lt;br&gt;OPEN, F2, F2.8, F4, F5.6, F8, F11, F16, CLOSE&lt;br&gt;It is not displayed when the lens is removed. For some lenses, no display appears.&lt;br&gt;The indication can be switched ON/OFF with the F.NO/IRIS IND. item on the LCD/VF[1/4] menu screen.&lt;br&gt;X: See page 89.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>Filter position indication</td>
<td>Indicates the current filter position.&lt;br&gt;No display : FILTER OFF&lt;br&gt;N1I : FILTER ND1 (1/4ND)&lt;br&gt;N2I : FILTER ND2 (1/16ND)&lt;br&gt;The indication can be switched ON/OFF with the FILTER item on the LCD/VF[1/4] menu screen.&lt;br&gt;X: See page 89.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>Audio Lock Indication</td>
<td>Displayed when the audio signal is locked to the video signal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>AUX display</td>
<td>Displays when in external image input mode (AUX IN mode)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Lens Ret Display</td>
<td>RET, FOCUS ASSIST</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>SHUTTER Display</td>
<td>Indicates the shutter speed (e.g., 1/1000) when SHUTTER DISP. on the LCD/VF[3/4] menu screen is set to ON. The indication can be switched ON/OFF with the SHUTTER DISP. item on the LCD/VF[3/4] menu screen.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### STATUS 2 Screen

This screen displays the camera setup statuses.

- Event display is not available while this screen is displayed.
- When SHUTTER DISP. on the LCD/VF[3/4] menu screen is set to DEG, the shutter display for the frame rate in 24p or 25p mode is degrees.

#### Indications

- FILE<br>F: CAM1 [********], CAM2-4 [********], and EXT1 - 4 [********] * indicates SUB NAME<br>See pages 100-102. A symbol is displayed when a menu setting read from LOAD FILE was changed. The display disappears when the setting is saved using STORE FILE. |
- FULL AUTO<br>ON, OFF |
- GAIN<br>0dB, 3dB, 6dB, 9dB, 12dB, 15dB, 18 dB, ALC |
- SHUTTER<br>OFF, 1/6, 1/6.25, 1/7.5, 1/12, 1/12.5, 1/15, 1/24, 1/25, 1/30, 1/48, 1/50, 1/60, 1/100, 1/120, 1/250, 1/500, 1/1000, 1/2000, 1/4000, 1/10000<br>(Displayed when FAS or ALC mode is selected)<br>EE: The range for the shutter speed differs depending on the video format. See page 86. |
- WHT. BAL<br>A: [##00K], B: [##00K], PRESET [##00K], FAW<br>For A and B, ## represents 23, 25, 28, 30, 32, 34, 37, 43, 52, 65, or 80. For PRESET, 32 or 56. |
- AE LEVEL<br>–3, –2, –1, NORMAL, +1, +2, +3 |
- FILTER<br>OFF, ND1 (1/4ND), ND2 (1/16ND) |
- ZEBRA<br>60-70%, 70-80%, 85-95%, OVER 95%, OVER 100% |
- REMAIN<br>Displays the remaining tape (minutes) |
- AUDIO<br>Displays the audio sampling frequency and the audio level adjustment mode (Ex: 32K (CH1 CH2) ALC) |
- USER1<br>NONE, BARS, PRESET TEMP., B.STRETCH1 to 5, B.COMPRESS1 to 5, AE LEVEL+<br>£ for MANUAL mode |
- USER2<br>NONE, BARS, PRESET TEMP., B.STRETCH1 to 5, B.COMPRESS1 to 5, AE LEVEL+<br>£ for MANUAL mode |
- LENS RET<br>RET, FOCUS ASSIST |

### STATUS 3 Screen

This screen displays a list of setting statuses for USER1, 2, and 3 as well as LENS RET item on the SWITCH MODE menu screen. Events are not displayed while these statuses are being displayed.

#### Indications

- FILE<br>See page 86. |
- FULL AUTO<br>ON, OFF |
- GAIN<br>0dB, 3dB, 6dB, 9dB, 12dB, 15dB, 18 dB, ALC |
- SHUTTER<br>OFF, 1/6, 1/6.25, 1/7.5, 1/12, 1/12.5, 1/15, 1/24, 1/25, 1/30, 1/48, 1/50, 1/60, 1/100, 1/120, 1/250, 1/500, 1/1000, 1/2000, 1/4000, 1/10000<br>(Displayed when FAS or ALC mode is selected)<br>EE: The range for the shutter speed differs depending on the video format. See page 86. |
- WHT. BAL<br>A: [##00K], B: [##00K], PRESET [##00K], FAW<br>For A and B, ## represents 23, 25, 28, 30, 32, 34, 37, 43, 52, 65, or 80. For PRESET, 32 or 56. |
- AE LEVEL<br>–3, –2, –1, NORMAL, +1, +2, +3 |
- FILTER<br>OFF, ND1 (1/4ND), ND2 (1/16ND) |
- ZEBRA<br>60-70%, 70-80%, 85-95%, OVER 95%, OVER 100% |
- REMAIN<br>Displays the remaining tape (minutes) |
- AUDIO<br>Displays the audio sampling frequency and the audio level adjustment mode (Ex: 32K (CH1 CH2) ALC) |
- USER1<br>NONE, BARS, PRESET TEMP., B.STRETCH1 to 5, B.COMPRESS1 to 5, AE LEVEL+<br>£ for MANUAL mode |
- USER2<br>NONE, BARS, PRESET TEMP., B.STRETCH1 to 5, B.COMPRESS1 to 5, AE LEVEL+<br>£ for MANUAL mode |
- LENS RET<br>RET, FOCUS ASSIST |

### STATUS 4 Screen

This screen only displays VTR mode indication, date and time, event display and alarm indications.

- Whether or not date and time should be displayed and the display style are set on the TIME/DATE menu screen.
### Indications on the LCD Monitor and in the Viewfinder (Cont’d)

#### Status Screen in VTR MODE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Item Contents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td><strong>MEMORY</strong> display</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td><strong>ID</strong> and user’s bits display</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><strong>Remaining tape time</strong> display</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td><strong>Event display</strong> display</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td><strong>Audio sampling frequency indication</strong> display</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td><strong>Audio level meter indication</strong> display</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td><strong>VTR mode indication</strong> display</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Magnified Status Indications on the LCD Monitor

The characters on the status screens can be showed alone in magnified size on the LCD monitor.

1. Set the LCD+VF item on the LCD/VF[1/2] menu screen to ON. \[See page 91.\]
2. When the DISPLAY button is briefly pressed while the LCD monitor is displayed, the displayed contents change every time the DISPLAY button is pressed.

3. Only image displayed  
4. Characters shown enlarged  
5. Image and characters displayed

#### Controls, Indicators and Connectors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Item Contents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td><strong>Time Code Generator Setting indicator</strong> display</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td><strong>Drop/Non-drop indicator</strong> display</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td><strong>Synchronizer display with an external time code generator</strong> display</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td><strong>Indication of DR-HD100 Operation</strong> display</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### MEMO

When characters indicating the status are displayed in magnified size on the LCD monitor, the viewfinder displays the image.
### Indications on the LCD Monitor and in the Viewfinder (Cont’d)

#### Auto White Balance Indication (Camera mode only)

The AUTO WHITE indication and the result of the operation are displayed during the auto white balance adjustment operation.

*See “White Balance Adjustment” on page 52.

#### Menu Setting Screen

Screen used for making various settings.

- The Menu Setting Screen appears when the STATUS button is pressed for 1 second or more.
- See “Setting Menu Screens” on page 75.

#### Safety Zone Indication (Camera mode only)

This indication of the following safety zone and center mark indications can be turned ON/OFF with the SAFETY ZONE item and CENTER MARK item on the LCD/VF[1/4] menu screen. *See page 89.

In addition, the safety zone display is on or off depending on the REC item setting and the ASPECT item setting in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen, as shown below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SAFETY ZONE</th>
<th>4:3</th>
<th>14:9</th>
<th>16:9</th>
<th>16:9+4:3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>REC OFF</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>ON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CENTER MARK</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Alarm Message Display

- The following alarm messages are displayed while the STATUS (0, 1, 4) screen is shown in the VTR mode, or a STATUS screen is shown in the Camera mode.
- If an alarm is generated while the STATUS 2, 3 screen is displayed, the STATUS 0 screen returns to display the alarm.
- *See page 106.
- When an abnormality occurs in the VTR, a warning message with an error code is displayed.
- *See pages 106-108.

#### Alarm Message Display Screen

![Alarm display area]

**Alarm display area**

#### Switching between the LCD Screen and Viewfinder Display

- When the LCD+VF item in the LCD/VF[4/4] menu is set to OFF, the LCD monitor and viewfinder (VF) displays are as shown below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LCD Monitor Status</th>
<th>LCD Display</th>
<th>VF Display</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LCD Closed</td>
<td>Normal LCD</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inverted LCD</td>
<td>ON</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**MEMO**

- You can switch between the LCD monitor and the viewfinder by holding down the DISPLAY button for about 2 seconds.
- After you set up the function that switches the display between the LCD monitor and the viewfinder by holding down the DISPLAY button, the display mode is cancelled by the LCD monitor open/close and normal/inverted operations.
- If the LCD monitor is closed inside this device with the screen in the normal display orientation, holding down the DISPLAY button does not work.

- When the LCD+VF item in the LCD/VF[4/4] menu is set to ON, the LCD monitor and viewfinder (VF) displays are as shown below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LCD Monitor Status</th>
<th>LCD Display</th>
<th>VF Display</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LCD Closed</td>
<td>Normal LCD</td>
<td>ON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inverted LCD</td>
<td>ON</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**MEMO**

- Press the DISPLAY button for 2 seconds to switch the LCD screen display ON and OFF.
- The viewfinder screen is always displayed.
**PREPARATIONS**

### Basic System

*1 An HZ-FM13 cannot be used with a Th16 × 5.5BRMU or S14 × 7.3B12/U zoom lens. Use a FUJINON focus manual unit (FMM-8, CFH-3, CFC-12-990). For details, please consult your JVC authorized dealer.

### Attaching the Zoom Lens

1. Loosen the mount ring.
2. Attach the lens with its pin aligned with the hole in the mount.
3. Tighten the mount ring.
4. Connect the cable connector.
5. Clamp the lens cable.

**CAUTION**
- Be sure to tighten the mount ring completely. Incomplete tightening may result in the lens dropping off or disturbed back focus.
- Set the GY-HD250/GY-HD251’s power switch to “OFF” before the zoom lens is attached or detached.

### Attaching the Microphone (Provided)

Connect the provided microphone to the microphone holder. Provided microphone is a phantom microphone.

1. Turn the knob on the microphone holder anticlockwise to loosen it and open the microphone holder.
2. Place the microphone in the microphone holder.
3. Place the microphone toward the front to prevent it from interfering with the cassette cover.
4. Connect the microphone cable to the INPUT1 or INPUT2 input connector on the GY-HD250/GY-HD251.
5. Attach the microphone cable to the clamp.
6. Make sure to perform the correct setting for use of a phantom microphone.

*#* See page 56.

### How to Attach the Viewfinder

1. To attach the viewfinder, slide it in the direction of the arrow.
2. Set the viewfinder to a comfortable position and then turn the slide mounting ring and mount.
3. To take off the viewfinder, pull the knob in the direction of the arrow as you slide the viewfinder.
PREPARATIONS

About the Viewfinder Cable
Attach the viewfinder cable to the clamp on page 14.
To reduce the emission of unwanted radio waves, be sure to attach the provided core filter as shown in the figure below.
- Attach the core filter (black) as close to this device as possible, as shown in the figure.

Inserting an SD Memory Card
By using an SD memory card, you can save and call up menu settings and camera settings for GY-HD250/GY-HD251. ※ See “FILE MANAGE Menu Screen” on page 100.
Check that the POWER switch is OFF.

Inserting an SD Memory Card
1. Open the SD memory card cover.
2. Face the cutout end of the SD memory card inward and insert it in the direction of the arrow.
   CAUTION
   - Be sure not to touch the metal connector area of the SD memory card.
3. Close the SD memory card cover.

About SD Memory Cards
- When you use an SD memory card that was either just purchased or formatted on a device other than GY-HD250/GY-HD251, format it on GY-HD250/GY-HD251.
   ※ See page 102.
   Recommended SD memory cards
   Panasonic: 16 MB to 2 GB
   - You can write-protect the card so that saved files are not mistakenly erased. Set the switch on the side of the SD memory card to the “LOCK” position.

MEMO
SDHC-compliant memory cards cannot be used with this device.

Taking out the SD memory card
1. Push the SD memory card in the direction of the arrow.
   - The SD memory card comes out slightly.
2. Pull the SD memory card straight out.

CAUTION
- The front base mount may be locked while the pin of the tripod base is not inserted into the hole on the rear base mount of this device. Therefore, after mounting, make sure that these parts are engaged properly.
- When moving this device mounted on a tripod, any impact or vibration should be avoided as this may cause this device to become detached and to drop from the tripod.
Be sure to remove this device from the tripod before transporting it.

Attaching the Tripod Base
(Provided only for U model)
Use the provided tripod base to place the camera on a tripod.
(U model only)
1. Attach the tripod base on the tripod by using the hole that balances this device most optimally.
2. While pushing the safety lever, pull the lock lever toward the front until the front mount clip clicks into place.
3. Place this device on the tripod base by aligning the rear base mount of this device with the pin on the tripod base.
4. Hold the camera on the top and slide forward so that the base mount of the camera is locked by the front mount clip of this device as it clicks into place.
AC Operation

The GY-HD250/GY-HD251 is operable with AC power supply or battery pack.

Use the AC adapter as the AC power supply.

1. After making sure that the power switches of the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 and of the AC adapter are set to "OFF," connect the DC cable to the DC OUTPUT connector of the AC adapter and the DC INPUT connector of the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 as shown in the illustration.
   - To lessen the amount of unnecessary radio waves emitted, attach a provided Clamp filter near both ends of the DC cable as shown in the diagram.

2. Press the POWER switch of the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 to ON. Power is supplied to the VTR section and the camera.

CAUTION

- Do not remove or connect the DC cable while recording is being performed.
- Do not use any power source with large fluctuations in the power source voltage, power sources generating noise, such as ripples or power sources with lower voltage.

Charging the Built-in Battery

The built-in, rechargeable backup battery retains the date and time and the time code data.

The built-in battery is constantly being charged whenever the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 is connected to a power supply, but it gradually discharges while the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 is disconnected from a power supply. The battery will be fully discharged when the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 is not used for about three months, in which case the set date and time and time code data are reset.

In this case, recharge the built-in battery and then set the date and time and time code data again.

However, it is possible to use the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 even if the built-in battery is discharged but the date and time and time code data cannot be recorded.

How to charge the built-in battery

1. Connect the AC adapter to the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 and an AC outlet or mount a charged battery on the GY-HD250/GY-HD251.
2. Set the POWER switch on the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 to "ON" or "OFF" (charging takes place with the POWER switch set to either of the positions).
3. Leave the equipment in this condition for about 4 hours.
   - The built-in battery will remain charged for about 3 months after being charged for about 4 hours.

Battery Operation

The attachable battery varies depending on location.

Recommended batteries

U model: Dionic 90 (Anton Bauer)
E model: Endura-7 (IDX)

CAUTION

- Use only the recommended batteries.
- If a heavy battery is used, the battery may fall out depending on the way the HD camera recorder is used.

GY-HD250U

Use an Anton Bauer battery.

GY-HD251E

Use an IDX (Endura) battery.

Attaching the Battery

1. Align the battery guide pins (three places) with the battery adapter guide holes and insert straight. Battery will not be properly attached if guide pins are not straight.
2. Slide the battery towards the Cassette cover side panel until it clicks.
   - The battery is attached.

Removing the Battery

Slide the battery up while holding down the lock release button to remove the battery.
Turning the Power OFF

1. Place the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 in the record-standby or STOP mode.
2. Set the POWER switch to OFF.
3. Remove the battery pack or the power supply to the DC INPUT connector. (When the camera is not going to be used for a longer period.)

Turning the Power ON

1. Set the POWER switch to ON. This device turns on in Camera mode.
2. The operation differs according to whether this device is in the Camera mode or in the VTR mode.
3. The mode switches each time you press the CAM/VTR button. When the mode is switched, the VTR indicator displays the following statuses.
   - While the mode is being switched: Flashing
   - In VTR mode: Lit
   - In Camera mode: Off

CAUTION

- Do not set the POWER switch to OFF while recording is taking place.
- Confirm that the “STBY” or “STOP” indication is shown in the VTR operation mode indication area before the power is turned off.
- Should the POWER switch accidentally be set to OFF during a recording, wait at least 5 seconds before turning the power on again.
- Always set the POWER switch to OFF before disconnecting the power supply.
- Do not remove the battery pack or turn AC adapter OFF while the POWER switch on the camera is still set to ON.

Preparations for Operation

Turning the Power OFF

1. Place the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 in the record-standby or STOP mode.
2. Set the POWER switch to OFF.
3. Remove the battery pack or the power supply to the DC INPUT connector. (When the camera is not going to be used for a longer period.)

Turning the Power ON

1. Set the POWER switch to ON. This device turns on in Camera mode.
2. The operation differs according to whether this device is in the Camera mode or in the VTR mode.
3. The mode switches each time you press the CAM/VTR button. When the mode is switched, the VTR indicator displays the following statuses.
   - While the mode is being switched: Flashing
   - In VTR mode: Lit
   - In Camera mode: Off

CAUTION

- Do not set the POWER switch to OFF while recording is taking place.
- Confirm that the “STBY” or “STOP” indication is shown in the VTR operation mode indication area before the power is turned off.
- Should the POWER switch accidentally be set to OFF during a recording, wait at least 5 seconds before turning the power on again.
- Always set the POWER switch to OFF before disconnecting the power supply.
- Do not remove the battery pack or turn AC adapter OFF while the POWER switch on the camera is still set to ON.

Preparations for the Battery Operation

- Do not detach the battery pack while recording is taking place.
- Do not connect or disconnect the DC cable while operating with a battery pack.
- The power is cut off for a moment when the DC cable is disconnected.
- Noise to the video and audio signals occurs. Audio signals are muted.
- When operating is continued with DC input after the battery pack capacity has been used up, set the POWER switch to OFF after the DC power is applied. Then switch ON again.
- If the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 is left with the battery pack attached, a small amount of power is consumed even if the POWER switch on the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 is set to OFF. Remove the battery pack when the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 is not going to be used.

Precautions for the Battery Pack

- When the battery pack is not in use, it must be stored in a cool, dry place.
- Do not leave the battery pack in a place where it might be subject to a high temperature (under direct sunlight in a car, etc.), this could cause leakage of the fluid or shorten service life.
- When the terminal section of the battery pack gets dirty, the operating time will be shortened.
- If the operating time becomes greatly reduced even immediately after recharging, the service life of the battery pack is nearly finished.
- Purchase a new battery pack.

Precautions for the Battery Pack

- When the battery operation may differ depending on the age of the battery pack, charging conditions and the operating environment, etc. Use the values in the table on the above for approximate reference times.
- Operating time is reduced in areas with a cold environment.
- Operating time is reduced when the power zoom lens and LCD are used frequently.

Remaining Battery Power Display

When the remaining battery power is nearly exhausted, the following warnings will be generated.
- Viewfinder screen or LCD monitor
- When a Status screen is displayed (excluding the STATUS 2, 3 screen in the Camera mode)
- Alarm indication: LOW VOLTAGE displayed.
- FRONT and BACK TALLY lamp on camera: Blinks
- Monitoring loudspeaker and PHONES jack: Alarm sound

MEMO
- If the remaining battery power warnings appear, the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 automatically stops operation if the battery power operation is continued.

Operating Time with Battery Pack

When a fully charged battery pack is attached, the approximately continuous operating time is as follows

Battery Pack

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Battery Pack</th>
<th>Continuous Operating Time (at 25°C (77°F))</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Digital 90 (U model)</td>
<td>Approx. 3.2 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digital 72 (E model)</td>
<td>Approx. 2.9 hours</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Battery operation time may differ depending on the age of the battery pack, charging conditions and the operating environment, etc. Use the values in the table on the above for approximate reference times.
- Operating time is reduced in areas with a cold environment.
- Operating time is reduced when the power zoom lens and LCD are used frequently.

Recharging

- Recharge the battery pack after completely discharging it. Repeated recharging with residual charge remaining could result in reduced battery capacity.
- If the battery capacity is reduced by repeating incomplete discharging, or recharging without discharging, once discharge the battery pack completely, then recharge it to restore the battery capacity.
- If the battery pack is charged with its internal temperature raised immediately after use, recharging may not be performed completely.
- Perform charging in an environment where the temperature is between 10°C (50°F) and 35°C (95°F), 20°C (68°F) to 25°C (77°F) is the ideal temperature range for charging. If the environment is too cold, charging may not complete.
Unloading the Cassette

1. Turn the POWER switch to ON.
2. When this device is in shooting standby mode or stop mode, slide the EJECT switch to the side and wait until the videocassette tape is ejected. A few seconds pass before the videocassette tape is ejected.
3. The LED turns off and the videocassette cover opens.
4. Carefully push the center of the videocassette cover in the direction of the arrow as far as it will go to close it.

CAUTION:
- When you close the videocassette cover, push it in firmly as far as it will go. If the videocassette cover is not closed properly, it becomes half-locked and this device cannot function.
- Do not close the videocassette cover or interfere with the eject operation while ejecting in progress. This will cause damage.
- When you close the videocassette cover, do not press the black area of the inner cover.

Setting and Displaying the Date and Time

The date and time of the built-in clock should be set. Powered by the built-in backup battery the set date and time data continue to count even when the power is switched off.

1. Set the POWER switch to ON.
2. Press the STATUS button for 1 second or longer to display the TOP MENU screen.
3. Rotate the SHUTTER dial to align the cursor ( ) with the TC/UB/CLOCK item, and then press the SHUTTER dial in the direction of the camera body.
4. The TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen appears.
5. Make settings on the TIME/DATE menu screen. (This includes display style, etc.)

**MENUS**
The TIME STYLE, SEC DISPLAY, DATE STYLE and TIME SHIFT items can also be set and changed after the date and time have been set.

[Diagram of Cassette Loading and Unloading]
Setting and Displaying the Date and Time (Cont’d)

Setting the Date and Time

1. Display the CLOCK ADJUST menu screen. Select the CLOCK ADJUST item on the TIME/DATE menu screen.

   ![TIME/DATE menu screen]

2. Set the date and time. The blinking digit is the one to be set.

   - When the SHUTTER dial is pressed, the blinking digit moves to the next digit.
   - When the SHUTTER dial is rotated, the value of the blinking digit changes. When the SHUTTER dial is rotated upward, the value becomes higher. When rotated downward, the value becomes smaller.
   - Repeat the procedure described in 1 and 2 above to set the day, month, year, hours, minutes.
   - The digits indicating seconds cannot be set.
   - Press the SHUTTER dial in sync with a time signal to enter the date and time precisely.

3. When all the settings are completed, rotate the SHUTTER dial to align the cursor with the PAGE BACK item, and then press the SHUTTER dial.

4. To return to the normal screen, use either of the following methods. Press the STATUS button or return to the TOP MENU screen and then select the EXIT item on the TOP MENU screen before pressing the SHUTTER dial.

Displaying the Time and Date on the Screen

Whether or not the time and date should be displayed on the screen and how to display them are set on the TIME/DATE menu screen.

![Displaying the TIME/DATE menu screen]

1. Display the TIME/DATE menu screen.
2. Set the TIME/DATE menu screen.
   - DISPLAY item: Sets whether or not date and time should be displayed. Set to ON to display the indications.
   - DISPLAY MODE: Sets the video output mode in which date and time should be displayed.
   - BARS: Displays when outputting the color bar.
   - CAM: Displays when outputting the color camera image.
   - BARS+CAM: Date and time are always displayed.
   - STYLE item: Sets the style in which the date and time are displayed.
   - DATE+TIME: Date and time are displayed.
   - DATE: Date only is displayed.
   - TIME: Time only is displayed.

Displaying Time Code

The GY-HD250/GY-HD251 records SMPTE-standard (NTSC) or EBU-standard (PAL) time codes and user’s bits.

When TC DUPLI. on the TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen is set to ON in IEEE1394 input mode, values input in the IEEE1394 connector are displayed. Time codes or user’s bits can be shown on the LCD monitor or in the viewfinder during playback and recording as follows.

1. Set the TC/UB item on the LCD/VF[3/4] menu screen to ON. Time codes or user’s bit data are displayed on the LCD monitor.

2. Whether time codes or user’s bit data should be displayed is selected with the TC DISPLAY switch inside the LCD door.

   - TC: Time codes are displayed.
   - UB: User’s bit data is displayed.

Displayed Time Code/User’s Bit

- When TCG SOURCE on the TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen is set to INTERNAL, values from the built-in time code generator are displayed.
- When TCG SOURCE on the TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen is set to EXTERNAL, values from the external time code generator connected to the TC IN terminal is displayed.
- When TC DUPLI. on the TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen is set to ON in IEEE1394 input mode, values input in the IEEE1394 terminal is displayed.
- Values recorded on the tape are displayed for PLAY mode.

Time code input entered the IEEE1394 connector

Pressing the STOP button for 1 second in the EJECT or stop mode displays the DV input time code data or user’s bit data from the IEEE1394 connector on the STATUS screen.

   - DTCG: Time code data from the IEEE1394 connector
   - DUBG: User’s bit data from the IEEE1394 connector

To return to display of the original time code or user’s bit, press the STOP button. (Display of the normal time code or user’s bit is also restored by performing VTR operation.)

MEMO

- To use input time code data from the IEEE1394 terminal, set TCG SOURCE item on the TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen to INTERNAL.
- To record HDV/DV input time code and user’s bit from the IEEE1394 connector, set the TC DUPLI. item on the TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen to ON.
- To maintain the continuity of time code data, use with the TC GENE. switch set to REGEN mode when recording HDV/DV input signal from the IEEE1394 connector.
- There is no time code display for HDV input.

CAUTION

A time code with a duration of more than 2 hours may not be displayed correctly by DV components for general consumer use, as some of these lack the capability to display longer time codes.
Presetting and Recording of Time Code

The time codes from the internal time code generator can be recorded at the time of recording scenes.

There are two ways to preset the time code:
- Set from the TCUB/CLOCK menu screen.
- Set in the LCD screen without opening the menu screen.

This section explains how to set from the TCUB/CLOCK menu screen.

Setting

To preset the Time Code, make the following settings.
- TC GEN. switch
  - REC or FREE:
    - The data preset in the time code generator runs only during recording. Use this setting if it is necessary to record continual time codes across different scenes.
    - However, approximately ±1-frame variations may occur in scene accuracy.
  - FREE:
    - The time code starts to run from the time it is preset in the time code generator.

- Set the TCG SOURCE item in the TCUB/CLOCK menu screen to INTERNAL.

Presetting time code data

The time code and user's bit data are preset on the TCUB/CLOCK menu screen.

1. Display the TCUB/CLOCK menu screen.
2. Set the time code (hours, minutes, seconds, frames).
   - When the SHUTTER dial is pressed, the blinking digit changes.
   - When the SHUTTER dial is rotated, the value of the blinking digit changes.
3. After setting the frame digit, press the SHUTTER dial to make EXECUTE blink. The setting values are confirmed when the SHUTTER dial is pressed again.
4. Zero-resetting the Time Code or User's Bit Data
   - Rotate the SHUTTER dial to align the cursor (►) with TC PRESET, and then press the SHUTTER dial.
   - When the SHUTTER dial is pressed, the blinking digit is the one to be set.
   - When the SHUTTER dial is rotated, the value of the blinking digit changes.
   - When the SHUTTER dial is rotated upward, the value becomes higher. When rotated downward, the value becomes smaller.
   - Repeat the procedure described in 4 and 5 above to set the desired value for all digits.

Presetting user's bit data

The user's bit data are preset with the UB PRESET item on the TCUB/CLOCK menu screen. The method for setting is the same as the method for setting the time code described on the left.

- The user's bit can be specified using numerals or alphabetic letters from 0 to F for each digit.
- To record user's bit data, set the UB REC item to ON (Only when set to FRAME RATE 50/25).

CAUTION

It is not possible to set all the digits of the user's bit data to "F".
Reading of the data during playback will not be possible for an all-F setting.

Zero-resetting the Time Code or User's Bit Data

This is performed with the TC or UB PRESET item on the TCUB/CLOCK menu screen. (Performed separately for the time code and the user's bit data.)

- Rotate the SHUTTER dial to align the cursor (►) with the TC or UB PRESET item, and then press the SHUTTER dial.
- Rotate the SHUTTER dial to select ZERO PRESET as the setting value, and then press the SHUTTER dial.

MEMO

When a menu screen is not being displayed, you can zero reset the time code data by simultaneously holding down the USER2 button and the STOP button for about 1 second.
### PREPARATIONS FOR OPERATION

#### Presetting the Time Code from the LCD Screen

The time code can be preset directly from the LCD screen without opening the TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen.

**CAUTION**
- PRESET mode is not available in the following.
  - TC GENE. item in the TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen is set to EXTERNAL.
  - TC DUPLI. item in the TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen is set to OFF.
  - Menu screen is displayed.
  - RECORDING mode is active.
  - Switching to CAM/VTR mode (When VTR indicator is blinking).

**Setting**
- **TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen**
  - Set TC GENE to INTERNAL.
  - Set framing of the time code generator in DROP FRAME. (When set to FRAME RATE 60/30)
  - Set to enable/disable user’s bit recording in UB REC. (When set to FRAME RATE 50/25)
  - Set the TC GENE switch inside the LCD door to REC or FREE.

**MEMO**
See page 44 for details on the above settings.

**Operation**
- Set the TC DISPLAY switch. Set to TC to preset time code and UB to preset user’s bit.

**Aborting Preset Operation**
While presetting, press the USER1 button while holding down the STATUS button.
- Preset operation stops and the LCD screen returns to the original screen.

**CAUTION**
- Preset operation is terminated in the following.
  - TC DISPLAY switch is changed
  - CAM/VTR mode switch is changed
  - VTR operations are performed
  - USER1, USER2, and USER3 presetting in the SWITCH MODE menu screen is not available when the Time Code Preset screen is displayed.
  - The time code preset screen is displayed on the LCD screen or viewfinder. It will not be output from the VIDEO OUT terminal.

#### Recording Time Codes in Continuation of Time Codes Recorded on Tape

The GY-HD250/GY-HD251 also incorporates a time code generator. During playback, this device can read the time code data recorded on the tape and record time codes in continuation of the existing data.

**The recorded user’s bit data are identical to the user’s bit data recorded on tape.**
- **MEMO**
The time code framing mode automatically becomes the mode (drop frame or non drop frame) already recorded on tape.

**Setting**
- Set TCG SOURCE on the TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen to INTERNAL.
- Set TC DUPLI. item on the TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen to OFF.

**About Time Code Mode**

**Camera mode**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TC/UB/CLOCK menu</th>
<th>TC GENE switch</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TC Source item</td>
<td>FREE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TC DUPLI. item</td>
<td>REC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TC GENE switch</td>
<td>REGEN</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**VTR mode/IEEE1394 input mode**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TC/UB/CLOCK menu</th>
<th>TC GENE switch</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TC Source item</td>
<td>FREE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TC DUPLI. item</td>
<td>IEEE1394 TC SLAVE mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TC GENE switch</td>
<td>REGEN</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**MEMO**
- When HD/SD-SDI OUT of the VIDEO FORMAT [2/2] menu screen is set to ON, the playback time code is output from the [HD/SD-SDI] terminal.

**Playing Back Time Code**

This device features a time code reader. During playback, the time code or user’s bit data recorded on the tape is displayed on the LCD screen or viewfinder status screen.

- **MEMO**
  - During playback, if a portion of tape without recording time code runs through, the time code stops running. Playback continues.
  - When a tape with a time code that is longer than two hours is played on home-use DV equipment, time code may not be played properly on some models.

* IEEE1394 TC SLAVE mode is performed with special operations. See page 48.
Synchronizing with the Time Code of the IEEE1394 (DV)-Connected Master Unit

You can synchronize the time code when performing multi-camera recording. The internal time code generator will be synchronized with the time code in the signal input from the IEEE1394 terminal. After synchronization (slave lock), the internal time code generator continues to run even if the IEEE1394 cable is disconnected.

Connections
Connect the master unit and the slave unit with an IEEE1394 cable.

Settings and Operations
- Master unit (GY-HD100U/GY-HD100E/GY-HD110E/GY-HD110U/GY-HD250U/GY-HD251E)
  1. Set the IEEE1394 switch on the left side to [DV].
  2. Set to Camera mode.
  3. Set the recording format to DV-60I or DV-50I.
  4. Set the TC GENE. switch to [FREE].
  1. Set the IEEE1394 switch on the left side to [DV].
  2. Set to VTR mode.
  3. Check that the camera image from the master unit is input.
  4. Set TCG SOURCE in the TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen to INTERNAL. (GY-HD250U, GY-HD251E)
  5. Set the TC GENLOCK switch to [FREE] and the TC DISPLAY switch to [TC].
  6. Set to STOP mode or EJECT mode.
  7. Press the STOP button for 1 second.
     - The DV input time code data from the IEEE1394 terminal is displayed in the status display. (When status is in magnified size, characters are displayed.)
  8. Press the USER1 button to begin slave lock.
     (To skip slave lock, press the USER3 button and clear the status display.)

Operation
1. Set the external time code generator and operate it.
   - The built-in time code generator synchronizes with the input external time code data.
   - "L" lights up in the STATUS 1 screen of LCD screen or viewfinder. "L" also lights up when the LCD screen is in enlarged character display.

CAUTION
- If a time code generator is connected or disconnected during recording, servo lock will be disturbed.
- When connecting multiple devices and assigning one as the master unit and others as slave units if there is only one slave unit, connect as shown below. If there are multiple slave units, input external synchronization signals to all GENLOCK/AUX IN terminals from the synchronization signal generator.

Synchronizing with an External Time Code Generator

Synchronize the built-in time code generator with the SMPTE/EBU-compliant LTC time code, which is input from the [TC IN] terminal. After synchronization (slave lock), the built-in time code generator continues to run even if external time code are not input.

Connection
- Input external synchronization signal to the external time code generator and the GENLOCK/AUX IN terminal of this device.
  - Use BB signals or Tri-sync HD signals as the external synchronization signals.

CAUTION
- When the power switch is turned on while the external synchronization signal is input, a vertical vibration occurs for a few seconds. This is not a malfunction.
- Input SMPTE/EBU-compliant LTC time code signal to the PB/TC IN terminal.

Setting
- Set the [GENLOCK/AUX IN] switch to GENLOCK.
- Set the [PB/TC] switch to TC.
- Set TCG SOURCE in the TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen to EXTERNAL.
- Set the LCD screen or viewfinder to STATUS 1 screen display.
- Or set the LCD screen to enlarged status display screen. Refer to page 29.
**Preparations for Operation**

### Screen Adjustment

LCD monitor direction, angle, screen brightness, etc. can be adjusted.

#### Adjusting the Direction and Angle of the LCD monitor
- With the LCD door in the open condition, rotate the LCD door.
- It can be turned 180° in upward direction and 90° in downward direction.

#### When turned 180° upward direction, the LCD monitor can be viewed from the lens side (vertically inverted image).

### Viewfinder Adjustment

#### Direction of the Viewfinder
Adjust the position and angle of the viewfinder.

#### Diopter Adjustment
Rotate the eyepiece focusing ring until the viewfinder screen image is clearly visible.

#### Adjustment of the Viewfinder Screen
- PEAKING: Adjusts the contour of the LCD monitor and the viewfinder screen.
- VF BRIGHT: Adjusts the brightness of the viewfinder screen.

Adjustments are made on the LCD/VF[2/4] menu screen.

### Back Focus Adjustment
It is only necessary to perform this when the lens is attached for the first time or when focusing is not correct in both the telephoto and wide-angle positions.

1. Set the IRIS mode switch to M (Manual).
2. Set the zoom mode to M (Manual).
3. Open the iris by turning the iris ring. If the illumination is too strong, reduce it or move to a darker place.
4. Turn the zoom lever until the lens is at the maximum telephoto position.
5. Bring the subject into focus.
6. Set the lens to maximum wide-angle.
7. Loosen the back focus ring retaining knob.
8. View the same subject and adjust the back focus ring for the best possible focus.
9. Repeat steps 4. through 8. about three times for fine adjustment until the subject remains in focus in both the telephoto position and the wide-angle position.
10. Tighten the back focus ring retaining knob to secure the ring.

#### MEMO
The screen size of the viewfinder can be changed by selecting the desired size with the ASPECT item on the VIDEO FORMAT[1/2] menu screen (4:3 or 16:9).
### PREPARATIONS FOR OPERATION

#### White Balance Adjustment

Since the color of light (color temperature) varies depending on the light source, it is necessary to re-adjust the white balance when the main light source illuminating the subject changes.

**Adjustment procedure**

1. Set the following switches.
   - Set the POWER switch to ON.
   - Set the IRIS mode switch of the lens to A (Auto).
   - Set the FULL AUTO switch to OFF.
2. Set the ND filter switch according to the current lighting.
3. Place a white object near the center of the screen under the same lighting conditions as the target subject and zoom in to fill the screen with white.
4. Press the AWB (Auto White Balance) button. ‘AUTO WHITE A, B OPERATION’ is displayed in the viewfinder while the auto-white balance adjustment circuit operates.
5. When correct white balance is obtained, the approximate color temperature is displayed together with ‘AUTO WHITE A, B OK’ for about 5 seconds.

**CAUTION**

- Do not adjust using any highly reflective objects, such as metal, etc., as this may result in improper white balance adjustment.
- The FAW (Full Auto White balance) function cannot provide optimum white balance with a subject outside the FAW adjustment range, for example when it contains only a single color or not enough white color.
- The accuracy of the FAW (Full Auto White balance) is inferior to that of the Auto white balance.
- When the power is turned on with the FAW mode selected, it takes about 10 seconds for the FAW adjustment to be completed. Do not shoot within this interval.

#### Full Auto White Balance (FAW)

The FAW function adjusts the white balance value automatically as the lighting condition changes.

This mode is convenient when you have no time to adjust the white balance or when the camera is moved frequently in and out of places under different lighting conditions.

**Setting procedure**

The FAW function can be activated with the FAW item on the SWITCH MODE menu screen. The FAW function can be allocated to one of the white balance switching switches A, B, or PRESET.

---

#### White Shading Adjustment

Even if white balance is achieved in the middle of the screen, it may not be achieved at the top and bottom of the screen. Greens and magentas may be colored. This is due to characteristics of the lens. Correcting this phenomenon is called White Shading Adjustment.

Perform this after adjusting white balance. White shading adjustment is performed on the WHITE BALANCE menu screen.

1. Display the WHITE BALANCE menu screen.
   - Follow the steps in “Setting Menu Screens” on page 75 and proceed as follows:

Setting in the WHITE BALANCE screen is performed as follows:

- Selecting an item
  - Turn the SHUTTER dial to align the cursor (↑) with the desired item, and press the SHUTTER dial.
    - The item is selected and the setting value blinks.
  - Changing the setting value
    - Turn the SHUTTER dial to change the blinking value. When the SHUTTER dial is pressed, the value stops blinking and the setting is changed.

2. Perform the above steps to set SHADING to MANUAL.
3. Select LEVEL(R), LEVEL(G), LEVEL(B) and press the SHUTTER dial.
   - The setting value for the selected LEVEL blinks and becomes available for changing.

---

#### Error messages

If the adjustment ends abnormally, an error message, as described below, blinks for about 5 seconds.

- **ERROR: LOW LIGHT (Insufficient illumination)**
  - Displayed when the illumination is dim. Increase the illumination and then re-adjust the white balance.
- **ERROR: OVER LIGHT (Excessive illumination)**
  - Displayed when the light is excessively bright. Decrease the illumination and then re-adjust the white balance.

### MEMO

Fine-tune red and blue to match the white adjusted in white balance in ‘WHITE PAINT’ on the WHITE BALANCE menu screen. See page 55.

---

See “White Balance Adjustment” on page 52.
Setting the Video Format

Set the video format using the FRAME RATE item and the REC item on the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen.

Setting the FRAME RATE Item

1. Press the STATUS button for at least 1 second.
   - The TOP MENU screen is displayed.
2. Turn the SHUTTER dial and bring the cursor (▼) to the VIDEO FORMAT... item and press the SHUTTER dial.
   - The VIDEO FORMAT[1/2] menu screen is displayed.
3. Turn the SHUTTER dial and bring the cursor (▼) to the FRAME RATE item and press the SHUTTER dial.
   - The setting for the selected item flashes and can be changed.
   - "CHANGE THE SYSTEM" is displayed on the screen.
4. Turn the SHUTTER dial, change the setting and push the SHUTTER dial.
   - The setting stops flashing and is temporarily set.
   - Move the cursor (▼) to the EXECUTE item and EXECUTE flashes.
5. Push the SHUTTER dial.
   - "REBOOT! SYSTEM CHANGE" is displayed on the screen and after a few seconds the system is rebooted.

Setting the REC Item

Set the REC item using the same steps as for the FRAME RATE item.

MEMO
- If you change the FRAME RATE item setting, the system is rebooted.
- The synchronous video signal is momentarily disturbed when the REC item setting is switched.
- We recommend the following settings for REC item (in HDV format).
  - When recording images with a lot of motion: Set to HDV60p or HDV50p
  - When recording images with little motion: Set to HDV30p or HDV25p

Camera Settings

1. Set the switch positions.
   - [GAIN] switch: Set to L (0 dB).
   - [WHT. BAL] (Auto White Balance) switch: Set to A or B.
2. Set the lens' iris mode switch to "A" (Auto iris side).
3. Select the ND filter.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ND FILTER</th>
<th>Suitable Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>Indoors, dark outdoors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/4ND</td>
<td>Outdoors under clear sky</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/16ND</td>
<td>Outdoors under extremely clear sky</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Set the shutter speed to OFF with the SHUTTER dial.

Screen Size (4:3/16:9) Mode Selection

The screen size of recorded images can be selected with the ASPECT item on the VIDEO FORMAT[1/2] menu screen.

1. Set the switch positions.
   - [CH-1] switch: Set to CH-1/CH-2.
   - [CH-2] switch: Set to CH-1/CH-2.

MEMO
- In DV mode, selection of SQUEEZE and LETTER is not possible. The screen display mode becomes SQUEEZE.
- When you set the REC item on the VIDEO FORMAT[1/2] menu to HDV format, the ASPECT item is fixed at 16:9 and "[16:9]" is displayed.
- If the above applies, you can set to display the image in the style of 4:3 televisions.
- To record using the standard screen, set ASPECT to 4:3.
- To record using the 16:9 screen, set ASPECT to 16:9.
- When the ASPECT item is set to 4:3, the screen that is displayed may differ depending on the 16:9 television you are using.

Audio Input Signal Selection

The GY-HD250/GY-HD251 is provided with the INPUT1 connector and the INPUT2 connector for audio input. Select the audio from the INPUT1 connector or the INPUT2 connector using the CH-2 INPUT switch for the audio to be recorded in CH-2.

Selecting the CH-2 channel input connector

Select using the CH-2 INPUT switch.

INPUT1 : Inputs the audio from the INPUT1 connector into CH-2.
INPUT2 : Inputs the audio from the INPUT2 connector into CH-2.

Adjusting Audio during Recording

For each audio channel, use the CH-1/CH-2 AUDIO SELECT switch to select whether the audio level adjustment should be set to AUTO mode or MANUAL mode.

Adjusting the audio input level control

The audio input level can be adjusted manually when the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 is in the record, record-standby or stop mode.

1. Set the CH-1/CH-2 AUDIO SELECT switch of the channel whose audio level that you want to adjust manually to MANU.
2. Rotate the audio input level control corresponding to the audio input level to be adjusted.
   • Adjust so that the peak level does not exceed the –3 dB point when a loud sound is input.

Selecting the audio signal input

Select the sound to be input to the INPUT1 or INPUT2 connector using the AUDIO INPUT switch. The setting is made for each of INPUT1 or INPUT2 connector.

LINE : Set this position when connected to audio equipment, etc.
MIC : Set this position when using a dynamic microphone.
MIC+48V : Set this position when a microphone (phantom microphone) requiring +48 V DC power supply is connected.

Monitoring Audio during Recording

The audio input during recording, in record-pause or stop mode can be monitored through the monitoring speaker or earphone.

Selecting the audio signal input

Select using the CH-2 INPUT switch.

INPUT1 : Inputs the audio from the INPUT1 connector into CH-2.
INPUT2 : Inputs the audio from the INPUT2 connector into CH-2.

Adjusting Audio during Recording

For each audio channel, use the CH-1/CH-2 AUDIO SELECT switch to select whether the audio level adjustment should be set to AUTO mode or MANUAL mode.

Adjusting the audio input level control

The audio input level can be adjusted manually when the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 is in the record, record-standby or stop mode.

1. Set the CH-1/CH-2 AUDIO SELECT switch of the channel whose audio level that you want to adjust manually to MANU.
2. Rotate the audio input level control corresponding to the audio input level to be adjusted.
   • Adjust so that the peak level does not exceed the –3 dB point when a loud sound is input.

Monitoring Audio during Recording

The audio input during recording, in record-pause or stop mode can be monitored through the monitoring speaker or earphone.

Selecting the audio signal input

Select using the CH-2 INPUT switch.

INPUT1 : Inputs the audio from the INPUT1 connector into CH-2.
INPUT2 : Inputs the audio from the INPUT2 connector into CH-2.

Adjusting Audio during Recording

For each audio channel, use the CH-1/CH-2 AUDIO SELECT switch to select whether the audio level adjustment should be set to AUTO mode or MANUAL mode.

Adjusting the audio input level control

The audio input level can be adjusted manually when the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 is in the record, record-standby or stop mode.

1. Set the CH-1/CH-2 AUDIO SELECT switch of the channel whose audio level that you want to adjust manually to MANU.
2. Rotate the audio input level control corresponding to the audio input level to be adjusted.
   • Adjust so that the peak level does not exceed the –3 dB point when a loud sound is input.
Basic Recording Operation

1. Set the POWER switch to ON.
2. Start recording.

- Press the REC/VTR trigger button on the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 to start recording.
- Once recording has started, the FRONT TALLY lamp and BACK TALLY lamp light red.

1. Set the POWER switch to ON. This device turns on in camera mode.
2. Start recording.

- Press the REC/VTR trigger button on the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 to start recording.
- Once recording has started, the FRONT TALLY lamp and BACK TALLY lamp light red.

About the QUICK REC START Mode

If the REC/VTR trigger button is pressed immediately after the videocassette is inserted, the mode becomes the QUICK REC START mode that enables quick start of recording. However, when shooting starts in the middle of the tape, a blank space appears as the new scene will not be linked smoothly with the previous image. Also, the time code does not continue. (Some overlap may also occur.)

About the Focus Assist Function

When you press this button during shooting, the area of focus is displayed in blue, red or green, making it easy to focus accurately.  

- See "LCD/VF[1/4] Menu Screen” on page 89. You can also set this function from the RET button.
- See "SWITCH MODE Menu Screen" on page 86. (LENS RET item) When FOCUS ASSIST on the LCD/VF[1/4] menu screen is set to ACCU-FOCUS, ACCU FOCUS functions with FOCUS ASSIST. This makes focusing with shallower depth of field easier. ACCU FOCUS automatically turns OFF after approximately 10 seconds. (LONG PAUSE TIME item)

If the Record-Standby Mode Continues

Setting the time before the tape protection mode is engaged

- The time before the tape protection mode is engaged from the record-standby mode can be set to 5 minutes or 3 minutes with the LONG PAUSE TIME item on the OTHERS[1/2] menu screen. (LONG PAUSE TIME item)
- When the record-standby mode has continued for about 5 minutes or 3 minutes, the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 automatically stops drum rotation in order to protect the tape. (Tape protect mode)
- In the tape protect mode, STOP is shown as the VTR mode indication on the LCD monitor and in the viewfinder screen. (STATUS 1 screen)

- To start recording from the tape protect mode, press the REC/VTR trigger button.
- The drum starts rotating, and recording starts after about 3 seconds.
- To return to the record-standby mode from the tape protect mode, press the RET button.

CAUTION

- This function does not work when using RET button is used as FOCUS ASSIST button.

Checking Recorded Contents in Record-Standby Mode (Recording Check Function)

This function is available only when the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 is in the standby mode.

In standby mode, about 5 seconds of the last part of the content recorded in DV format can be played back, and about 7 seconds when the content was recorded in HDV format can be played back.

- The recorded contents can be checked on the LCD monitor or in the viewfinder. (When the STATUS 0, 1, 4 screen is displayed.)
**HEADER REC Function**

When the REC/VTR trigger button is pressed while the STOP button is pressed, this function first records the color bar video and the test tone (1 kHz sine-wave) of the built-in signal generator at the beginning of the tape. Then it records the black video signal and the mute audio signal for the duration specified in advance. When the recording is completed, this device enters the Record-Standby mode. The time code value at the Record-Standby position becomes the time code specified in advance. (HEADER REC function)

- Settings related to the HEADER REC function, such as whether the HEADER REC function should be enabled, the HEADER REC execution duration, and the time code value setting when the HEADER REC recording is completed, etc., are made on the HEADER REC menu screen.
- The HEADER REC function is enabled when TCG SOURCE on the TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen is set to INTERNAL.

**How to set the HEADER REC menu screen**

1. Select the TC/UB/CLOCK.. item on the TOP MENU screen.
2. Select the HEADER REC item on the TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen.
3. After HEADER REC recording is completed and the Record-Standby mode is engaged, normal recording starts when you press the REC/VTR trigger button.

**MEMO**
- To stop during HEADER REC operation, press the REC/VTR trigger button or the STOP button.
- The HEADER REC menu screen cannot be opened during HEADER REC recording.
- The HEADER REC menu screen becomes invalid when HEADER REC recording is performed.
- The user’s bits following completion of HEADER REC recording will be the user’s bits value set on the TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen.
- The running of the time code following completion of HEADER REC recording will be in accordance with the setting of the TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen.
- **TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen**
  - **START KEY**
    - TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen.
    - **EXECUTE**
      - Confirms the set time code.
      - **CANCEL**
        - Clears the set time code.
    - **MEMO**
      - The frame mode is set depending on the setting in the DROP FRAME item on the TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen.
      - The time code value at the point when the Record-Standby mode is engaged may differ some frames from the value set for this item.
- **TC DATA**
  - Set the time code value for the point when the Record-Standby mode is engaged following completion of HEADER REC.
  - **EXECUTE**
    - Confirms the set time code.
  - **CANCEL**
    - Clears the set time code.
- **USER DATA**
  - **EXECUTE**
    - Confirms the set user's bits.
  - **CANCEL**
    - Clears the set user's bits.
- **PAGE BACK**
  - The TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen returns when the SHUTTER dial is pressed.

**HEADER REC menu screen contents**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Initial Setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| START KEY| Sets whether the HEADER REC operation should be executed when the REC/VTR trigger button is pressed while the STOP button is pressed. DISABLE : HEADER REC operation is not executed.
| STOP+REC | HEADER REC operation is executed. |
| TC DATA  | Set the time code value for the point when the Record-Standby mode is engaged following completion of HEADER REC.
| EXECUTE  | Confirms the set time code.
| CANCEL   | Clears the set time code. The frame mode is set depending on the setting in the DROP FRAME item on the TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen.
| MEMO     | The time code value at the point when the Record-Standby mode is engaged may differ some frames from the value set for this item.
| UB DATA  | Set the user's bits of the HEADER REC section.
| EXECUTE  | Confirms the set user's bits.
| CANCEL   | Clears the set user's bits. |
| MEMO     | The user’s bits for the normal recording section are set on the TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen.
| BLACK TIME| Set the duration (seconds) in which the black signal is recorded during HEADER REC. (1-sec steps)
| [Initial Setting: 0SEC - 99SEC] | |
| PAGE BACK| The TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen returns when the SHUTTER dial is pressed. |
PLAYBACK MODE

Playback Procedure

Recorded pictures can be viewed in the viewfinder, or on the LCD monitor, or on the monitor connected to the video output connector.

1. Set the POWER switch to ON.
2. Set this device to the VTR mode.
   • Playback is also possible in the Camera mode. Playback becomes possible when the STOP button is pressed to set the VTR operation mode indicator to indicate STOP.
3. Load the recorded videocassette correctly.
4. Open the operation cover on the upper section of this device.
5. Slide the operation cover to the side to open.
6. Press the PLAY/STILL button.
   • Playback starts.
7. To re-start playback, press the PLAY/STILL button.
8. To stop playback or the still mode, press the STOP button.

MEMO

The GY-HD250/GY-HD251 can play back the following two types of videocassettes:
• MiniDV videocassette
• DVCAM videocassette
Tapes recorded in the LP mode cannot be played back.

1. When the automatic tracking function is activated at the start of the playback mode, digital noise may appear in the playback image.
2. This device does not allow manual tracking adjustment.
3. Following loading of the tape, the built-in head cleaner will emit a sound while operating. This does not indicate a malfunction.
4. The data recorded for the date and time or time code on the tape can be shown on the screen. To enable or disable the display is selected on the menu screen:
   • Display of date and time: TIME/DATA menu screen
   • Display of time code: LCD/VF[1/2] menu screen

Fast-Forward, Rewind

- Press the FF button in the stop mode to fast forward the tape. Press theREW button in the stop mode to rewind the tape. (VTR mode only)
- * "SWITCH TO VTR MODE" is displayed and the function does not work if the "FF" or "REW" buttons are pressed when Camera mode is in the stop mode.
- Set the AUDIO menu screen to stop fast forwarding or rewinding.

MEMO

When the tape approaches the end during fast forwarding or rewinding, the tape speed decelerates to protect the tape.
- The time required for fast forwarding and rewinding may become longer when used in a cold environment. This is not a malfunction.

Search

- Press the FF button in the stop mode or still mode to search the tape in the forward direction. Playback takes place while fast forwarding.
- Pressing theREW button executes search of the tape in the reverse direction. Playback takes place while rewinding.
- Each press on the button switches the speed to +2, +5, and +10.
- Press the PLAY/STILL button to resume normal playback.
- Press the STOP button to stop.

MEMO

- In the VTR mode, the camera image is not output on the LCD monitor, in the viewfinder or through the video output connector.
- When the still picture mode or stop mode has continued for a while, this device automatically switches to the tape protective mode.
- Noise may appear in the picture in the still mode.

Outputting Audio

Setting

Confirm that the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 is in the VTR mode. (VTR indicator: On)

1. Display the AUDIO menu screen.
   • Select the AUDIO item on the TOP MENU screen.
2. Set the AUDIO menu screen.
   • PB AUDIO CH [DV] items
     - CH1/2: To reproduce the sound (CH-1, CH-2) recorded during shooting.
     - MIX: To reproduce the sound recorded during shooting (CH-1, CH-2) and the after-recorded sound (on CH-3 and CH-4) simultaneously.
3. Either of the following operations returns you to the normal screen:
   • Press the STATUS button
   • Return to the TOP MENU screen, select the EXIT item and press the SHUTTER dial.

MEMO

- The DV format is capable of recording up to 4 channels when the 12-bit, 32 kHz sampling frequency is employed. The GY-HD250/GY-HD251 records audio on the two channels CH-1 and CH-2. (4-channel recording is possible in the case of DV input.)
- When the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 is used for playback of a tape that was recorded on another unit with audio recorded on the CH-3 and CH-4 channels, the PB AUDIO CH [DV] item on the AUDIO menu screen must be set.
- After-recording on the CH-3 and CH-4 channels is not possible.
- The PB AUDIO CH [DV] item is also valid for embedded audio.
- The sampling frequency for embedded audio is 48 kHz.

Earphone terminal output audio

Audio output is as shown in the table below depending on the MONITOR SELECT switch and AUDIO MONITOR and PB AUDIO CH [DV] settings on the AUDIO menu screen.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MONITOR SELECT</th>
<th>PB AUDIO CH [DV]</th>
<th>CH1/2</th>
<th>MIX</th>
<th>CH3/4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CH1/2</td>
<td>AUDIO MONITOR</td>
<td>L: CH1 R: CH2</td>
<td>L: CH1+CH3 R: CH2+CH4</td>
<td>L: CH1+CH3 R: CH2+CH4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOTH</td>
<td>MIX</td>
<td>L: CH1+CH2</td>
<td>L: CH1 R: CH2</td>
<td>L: CH1+CH3 R: CH2+CH4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH2</td>
<td>STEREO</td>
<td>L: CH2 L: CH3 R: CH4</td>
<td>L: CH1+CH3 R: CH2+CH4</td>
<td>L: CH1+CH3 R: CH2+CH4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* In HDV format, you can only select the settings within the bold frame.
### Exception Component

#### Connecting the Video Signal Cables

**Connecting the IEEE 1394 Cable**

To reduce the emission of unwanted radio waves, be sure to attach the provided clamp filter as shown in the figure below.

- Attach the clamp filter as close to this device as possible, as shown in the figure.
- Set the IEEE 1394 switch on the left panel of this device.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DV</th>
<th>:</th>
<th>DV format</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HDV</td>
<td>:</td>
<td>HDV format</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CAUTION**

When connecting the IEEE 1394 cable from/to Camcorder, VCR and other IEEE 1394 device, make sure the following instructions, otherwise the IEEE 1394 circuit device may be destroyed.

- Turn the power of both devices OFF and connect the IEEE 1394 cable.
- Do not insert incorrectly (in reverse) the IEEE 1394 cable end to IEEE 1394 port of both devices.
- Do not connect the IEEE1394 cable under the condition of static electricity.
- Turn the power of both devices OFF when changing the IEEE1394 switch from/to HDV/DV.

### Displaying Alarms

**• CHANGE 1394 SWITCH**

Displayed when the setting for the input/output video format from the IEEE1394 connector and the setting for the IEEE1394 switch are different. Set the IEEE1394 switch so it matches the video format.

### Recording Composite Video Signals from an External Device

This device features an AUX IN terminal and can record composite video signals from external devices.

**Connection**

- Input analog composite video signals from an external device to the GENLOCK/AUX IN terminal.
- **MEMO**
  - Input composite video signals with no jitter.
  - Input level: 1.0V ± 0.3V (p-p)

**Setting**

- Set this device to camera mode:
  - If the VTR indicator is lit, press the [CAM/VTR] button and turn off the indicator.
  - Set the GENLOCK/AUX IN switch to AUX IN.
  - Set REC on the VIDEO FORMAT[1/2] menu screen as follows.
    - U model: DV-60I
    - E model: DV-50I
  - Set SET UP item on the VIDEO FORMAT[2/2] menu screen as follows. (Only for U model)
    - ON : Set to this when input analog signals include the setup signal.
    - OFF : Set to this when input analog signals do not include the setup signal.

**Operation**

- Start and stop recording with the REC/VTR trigger button.
  - EE images of input signals are output in DV-60I (U model) or DV-50I (E model) formats from the various image output terminals.

**CAUTION**

- Recording cannot be checked using the lens RET button when recording external image signals.
- Do not touch GENLOCK/AUX IN switch during recording.

### Status Screen Display on the LCD Screen or Viewfinder

- "AUX" is displayed at the top left with signal format (DV60I or DV50I).

**DV-60I AUX**

**DV-50I AUX**

**DV-50I AUX**

**DV-50I AUX**

**STATUS 1 screen**

**STATUS 1 screen**

---

64

---

65
Using GENLOCK Functions

This device features a GENLOCK IN terminal. Input external synchronization signals in the GENLOCK IN terminal to synchronize camera images or playback images with external signals. Additionally, the H (horizontal) and SC (subcarrier) phase adjustments can be performed on image signals of this device for external synchronization signals from the GENLOCK menu screen.

GENLOCK functions are only valid in Camera mode. They do not work in VTR mode.

Connection
During Standby or Stop mode, input synchronization signals from a Sync signal generator to the GENLOCK/AUX IN terminal. The following synchronization signals are applicable. SD synchronization signal: BB (Black burst) signals SMPTE170M (RS-170A)-compliant for NTSC, ITU-R BT.470-6-compliant for PAL HD synchronization signal: HDTV Tri-sync signals SMPTE296M-compliant for HD720p SMPTE274M-compliant for HD1080i

CAUTION
- When the FRAME RATE is set to 60/30 or 24 in the VIDEO FORMAT[1/2] menu screen, input a 59.94 Hz synchronization signal (vertical synchronization). 50 Hz or 60 Hz synchronization signals cannot be synchronized. When the camera image is locking to external synchronization signals, “SYNC LOCKING” is displayed on the screen. When locking to external synchronization signals is complete, the indication disappears and you can enter recording mode.
- VTR playback signals with jitter cannot be synchronized with this device.
- Do not connect or disconnect the cable during recording or playback.
- When the power is turned on while the external synchronization signal is input, a vertical vibration occurs for a few seconds. This is not a malfunction.
- When the power is turned off, a 50 Hz (or 60 Hz) horizontal synchronization signal input of 50 Hz (or 60 Hz) frequency is output. This is normal operation.
- When values for SD H PHASE or HD H PHASE is changed, the images cannot be produced properly momentarily. This is not a malfunction.

Setting
- Set this device to Camera mode.
- Set the GENLOCK/AUX IN switch to GENLOCK.

Dubbing with AV Devices

By connecting the video signal output terminal and the AUDIO OUTPUT terminal on GY-HD250/GY-HD251 to an AV device, analog signal dubbing is possible.

1. Connect the cables.
   - To reduce the emission of unwanted radio waves, be sure to attach the provided clamp filter as shown in the figure below.
   - Attach the clamp filter as close to this device as possible, as shown in the figure.

2. Turn both devices on.
3. Set this device to VTR mode.
4. Set the video output.
6. Insert the videocassettes.
   - Set the audio channel to be output.
   - PB AUDIO CH [DV] item: Set the audio channel to be output.
7. Press the PLAY/STILL button on the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 to start playback.
8. Start recording on the recording unit.
   - For details, see the instructions to the unit used for recording.
9. When dubbing is completed:
   - Stop recording on the recording unit, and then press the STOP button on the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 to stop playback.

Synchronized Signals

The synchronized signal differs depending on the input sync signal. Refer the table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Terminal</th>
<th>Video signal</th>
<th>Input sync signal</th>
<th>BB</th>
<th>Tri-sync</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VIDEO</td>
<td>Composite</td>
<td>SC, V, V</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y/PaPr</td>
<td>SD Component</td>
<td>H, V, V</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HD Component</td>
<td>720p V, V, V</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SD Component</td>
<td>1080i H, V, V</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SD RGB</td>
<td>H, V, V</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SD y/c</td>
<td>SC, V, V</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HD/SD SDI</td>
<td>H, V, V</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HD/SD 720p</td>
<td>V, V, V</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HD/SD 1080i</td>
<td>V, V, V</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SC : Subcarrier phase</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>Vertical phase</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>Field phase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H : Horizontal phase</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>F</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adjust SC PHASE and H PHASE in the above table from the GENLOCK menu screen.

Adjust SC and H PHASE
1. Display the GENLOCK menu screen.
   - Follow the steps in “Setting Menu Screens” on page 75 and proceed as follows.
2. In the GENLOCK menu screen, select the item to perform adjustment for and adjust.
   - SD H PHASE : Adjust the H phase in SD analog signals.
   - HD H PHASE : Adjust the H phase in HD analog and SD/HD SDI signals. (During Tri-sync signal input, PHASE of SD analog signals are simultaneously adjusted in HD H PHASE item.)
   - SC PHASE : Adjust the SC phase in composite and YC signals.
   - For details, refer to “GENLOCK Menu Screen” on X See page 99.

MEMO
- [F] [H PHASE] cannot be adjusted during playback or recording.
- IEEE1394 output stops while H PHASE is being adjusted.
- When values for SD H PHASE or HD H PHASE is changed, the images cannot be produced properly momentarily. This is not a malfunction.
Connecting the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 to another video component equipped with HDV/DV connector (IEEE1394 standard) using a IEEE1394 cable (optional) enables dubbing of digital signals with high picture quality and high-quality sound.

Using the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 as the playback unit (Dubbing to another video)
1. Set the IEEE1394 switch on the left panel of this device.
2. Connect the IEEE1394 cable.
3. Turn both devices on.
4. Set this device to VTR mode.
5. Insert a videocassette tape.
6. Press the PLAY/STILL button on GY-HD250/GY-HD251 to start playback.
7. Start recording on the recording device.
8. When dubbing is finished, stop recording on the recording device, press the STOP button on this device, and stop the playback.

MEMO
- Set the IEEE1394 switch when this device is OFF.
- When dubbing in DV format, noise may also enter the audio.
- Operations may differ depending on the specifications of the connected device, and operations or data exchange may not be possible even if the devices are connected.
- If noise appears on the screen or the audio cuts out, reconnect the IEEE1394 cable or turn the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 on again.
- If you turn the power to the device connected to the IEEE1394 connector on and off or switch the video input, noise may occur in the audio. If you perform this type of operation, set the speaker volume as low as possible on the audio device connected to this device.
- Recording may not be possible in some cases even if the recorder is equipped with a IEEE1394 connector.

When Using the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 as Recording Unit (Dubbing From Another Videocassette)
1. Set the IEEE1394 switch on left side of the GY-HD250/GY-HD251.
2. Connect the units with the IEEE1394 cable.
3. Turn ON both units.
4. Place the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 in the VTR MODE.
5. Set the frame rate.
6. Insert the videocassettes.
7. Press the PLAY/STILL button on GY-HD250/GY-HD251 to start playback.
8. Start recording on the recording device.

MEMO
- Switch the IEEE1394 switch when this device is OFF.
- When you dub still images, they are low resolution images. Noise may also enter the audio.
- Operations may differ depending on the specifications of the connected device, and operations or data exchange may not be possible even if the devices are connected.
- If noise appears on the screen or the audio cuts out, reconnect the IEEE1394 cable or turn the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 on again.
- If you turn the power to the device connected to the IEEE1394 connector on and off or switch the video input, noise may appear in the audio. If you perform this type of operation, set the speaker volume as low as possible on the audio device connected to this device.
- Recording may not be possible in some cases even if the recorder is equipped with a IEEE1394 connector.

When dubbing in DV format, noise may also enter the audio.
- Operations may differ depending on the features and specifications of the connected device, and operations or data exchange may not be possible even if the devices are connected.
- Noise may appear in the audio. If you perform this type of operation, set the speaker volume as low as possible on the audio device connected to this device.
- Recording may not be possible in some cases even if the recorder is equipped with a IEEE1394 connector.

When using the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 as Recording Unit (Dubbing From Another Videocassette)
Backup Recording of the GY-HD250/GY-HD251’s Camera Image and Sound Through the IEEE1394 Connector

The GY-HD250/GY-HD251’s camera image and sound can be recorded for backup on another component that is equipped with IEEE1394 connector.

Connections
Use the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 as the master unit. Connect the master unit and the backup unit with a IEEE1394 cable.

Settings
1. Set the IEEE1394 switch on left side of the GY-HD250/GY-HD251.
   - DV : When backup in DV format
   - HDV : When backup in HDV format
2. Place in Camera mode.
   - For HDV mode, set the BACK SPACE [HDV] item. See page 97.

Backup unit
- Place in HDV/DV signal input mode. Depending on the used component, it may be necessary to set “REMOTE SELECT.”
- When BR-HD50 is used, set the Backup Recording function to OFF.
- Also, set REM SEL HDV/DV in the REMOTE[1/2] menu of the BR-HD50 to ON or LOC+REM.
- Insert the tape and set to STOP or REC PAUSE status.

CAUTION
- Set the IEEE1394 switch on both devices to either HDV or DV.
- Start recording after making sure that both devices are properly connected.
- If the RET button is pressed during backup recording, output from the IEEE1394 terminal is stopped, the image is switched to the image recorded on this device, interrupting the backup recording image.

Operation
Start and stop of recording on the backup unit takes place in accordance with the operation of the REC/VTR trigger button on the master unit.

(Memo)
- When the backup recording is started, the “TRIGGER TO DV” or “TRIGGER TO HDV” indication is shown on the LCD or in the viewfinder for approx. 3 seconds.
- When the Series Recording function of BR-HD50 is used, the GY-HD250/GY-HD251’s 1394 REC TRIG. item should be set to OFF.
- If the backup device is equipped with a feature to record time codes input from the IEEE1394 connector (TC DUPLICATE feature), time code data the same as on the master side can be recorded.
- If the master unit tape is paused or stopped when the master unit time code running mode is in REC RUN mode, the time code for the slave unit stops.
- When using BR-HD50 as a backup device and switching GY-HD250/GY-HD251 from the playback mode to the record mode, noise will be noticed on the monitor output screen of BR-HD50 (backup will be correctly recorded).

MEMO
- When the backup recording is started, the “TRIGGER TO DV” or “TRIGGER TO HDV” indication is shown on the LCD or in the viewfinder for approx. 3 seconds.
- When the Series Recording function of BR-HD50 is used, the GY-HD250/GY-HD251’s 1394 REC TRIG. item should be set to OFF.
- If the backup device is equipped with a feature to record time codes input from the IEEE1394 connector (TC DUPLICATE feature), time code data the same as on the master side can be recorded.
- If the master unit tape is paused or stopped when the master unit time code running mode is in REC RUN mode, the time code for the slave unit stops.
- When using BR-HD50 as a backup device and switching GY-HD250/GY-HD251 from the playback mode to the record mode, noise will be noticed on the monitor output screen of BR-HD50 (backup will be correctly recorded).

Connect a Remote Control Unit (RM-LP55/RM-LP57)

Set camera switch functions with the remote control unit (RM-LP55/RM-LP57).

Connection
Connect the remote control unit cable to the REMOTE terminal.

CAUTION
- Turn the power OFF when connecting.

Operation
1. Turn the device ON.
2. Turn ON the OPERATE switch on remote control unit to activate the remote control unit.

Notes on Using the Remote Control Unit
- When the switch function of this device and the remote control unit are the same, the remote control switch function is prioritized.
- FOCUS and ZOOM cannot be adjusted with the remote control unit.
- Shutter speed slightly differs from the value displayed on this device.
- Shutter Speed in 24p Mode
  - When this device is in 24p mode, shutter speed cannot be set to 1/60 (U model) or 1/50 (E model) with the remote control unit.
  - Even if shutter speed is set to 1/60 or 1/50 with the remote control unit when in 24p mode, the shutter speed for the device is 1/48.
- When H PHASE adjustment is performed with the remote control unit, only H PHASE of SD signal operates.
- When adjusting H PHASE of SD signal with the remote control unit, it cannot be set outside the range of SD H PHASE in the GENLOCK menu screen. See page 99.
- AUTO WHITE Function
  - When the device is in VTR mode or during playback or HEADER REC, the AUTO WHITE function does not work even if the auto white operation is performed with the RM-LP55 and RM-LP57.
  - In the case of the RM-LP55, “LOW LIGHT ERROR” is displayed on the LCD screen of the RM-LP55.
### Remote Control Unit Functions List

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>RM-LP55</th>
<th>RM-LP57</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BARS</td>
<td>RM-LP55</td>
<td>RM-LP57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONTOUR</td>
<td>RM-LP55</td>
<td>RM-LP57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONTOUR V/H LEVEL</td>
<td>RM-LP55</td>
<td>RM-LP57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRIS [MANUAL/AUTO]</td>
<td>RM-LP55</td>
<td>RM-LP57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRIS DETECT</td>
<td>RM-LP55</td>
<td>RM-LP57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHT BAL</td>
<td>AUTOT</td>
<td>AUTOT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AUTO1</td>
<td>AUTO1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PRESSET</td>
<td>PRESSET</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MANU</td>
<td>MANU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUTO WHITE</td>
<td>RM-LP55</td>
<td>RM-LP57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MANUAL WHITE BALANCE/R/B LEVEL</td>
<td>RM-LP55</td>
<td>RM-LP57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAIN</td>
<td>GB5</td>
<td>GB5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>G6B</td>
<td>G6B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LS/LUX</td>
<td>LS/LUX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-36B</td>
<td>-36B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALC/ALC</td>
<td>ALC/ALC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEA [OFF/ON]</td>
<td>RM-LP55</td>
<td>RM-LP57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHUTTER</td>
<td>1/1000</td>
<td>1/1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1/1200</td>
<td>1/1200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1/1500</td>
<td>1/1500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1/3000</td>
<td>1/3000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1/6000</td>
<td>1/6000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1/10000</td>
<td>1/10000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>V.SCAN</td>
<td>V.SCAN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZOOM</td>
<td>RM-LP55</td>
<td>RM-LP57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FOCUS</td>
<td>RM-LP55</td>
<td>RM-LP57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TELEZOOM [OFF/ON]</td>
<td>RM-LP55</td>
<td>RM-LP57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MASTER BLACK LEVEL</td>
<td>RM-LP55</td>
<td>RM-LP57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAMMA [OFF/ON]</td>
<td>RM-LP55</td>
<td>RM-LP57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAMMA MASTER LEVEL</td>
<td>RM-LP55</td>
<td>RM-LP57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KNEE MASTER LEVEL</td>
<td>RM-LP55</td>
<td>RM-LP57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TITLE [OFF/ON]</td>
<td>RM-LP55</td>
<td>RM-LP57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TITLE POSITION</td>
<td>RM-LP55</td>
<td>RM-LP57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TITLE CLEAR</td>
<td>RM-LP55</td>
<td>RM-LP57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H PHASE</td>
<td>RM-LP55</td>
<td>RM-LP57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SC CORRSE [OFF/ON]</td>
<td>RM-LP55</td>
<td>RM-LP57</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Only when frame rate is 60p, 60i, 30p, or 24p
*2: Only when frame rate is 50p, 50i, or 25p

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BAR [OFF/ON]</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONTOUR [OFF/ON]</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONTOUR V/H LEVEL</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRIS [MANUAL/AUTO]</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRIS DETECT</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHT BAL</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUTO WHITE</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MANUAL WHITE BALANCE/R/B LEVEL</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAIN</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LS/LUX</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-36B</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALC/ALC</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEA [OFF/ON]</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHUTTER</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZOOM</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FOCUS</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TELEZOOM [OFF/ON]</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MASTER BLACK LEVEL</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAMMA [OFF/ON]</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAMMA MASTER LEVEL</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KNEE MASTER LEVEL</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TITLE [OFF/ON]</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TITLE POSITION</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TITLE CLEAR</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H PHASE</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SC CORRSE [OFF/ON]</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### MENU SCREENS

**Menu Screen Configuration**

The Menu Screen consists of multiple layers of menu screens as shown below. The menu screen to be set is selected from the **TOP MENU** in accordance with the function or purpose.

The menu items on the menu screens differ with the Camera mode and the VTR mode. The contents of the set items are stored in the GY-HD250/GY-HD251’s memory and are retained even when the power is turned off.

The **FILE MANAGE** menu screen can be used to store the menu setting contents on the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 or SD memory card.

* Camera Mode

---

### Remote Control Unit Functions List

**Remote Control Unit Functions List**

The Remote Control Unit Functions are available as follows:

- **BAR [OFF/ON]**: RM-LP55
- **CONTOUR [OFF/ON]**: RM-LP55
- **CONTOUR V/H LEVEL**: RM-LP55
- **IRIS [MANUAL/AUTO]**: RM-LP55
- **IRIS DETECT**: RM-LP55
- **WHT BAL**: RM-LP55
- **AUTO WHITE**: RM-LP55
- **MANUAL WHITE BALANCE**: RM-LP55
- **GAIN**: RM-LP55
- **LS/LUX**: RM-LP55
- **-36B**: RM-LP55
- **ALC**: RM-LP55
- **MEA [OFF/ON]**: RM-LP55
- **SHUTTER**: RM-LP55
- **ZOOM**: RM-LP55
- **FOCUS**: RM-LP55
- **TELEZOOM [OFF/ON]**: RM-LP55
- **MASTER BLACK LEVEL**: RM-LP55
- **GAMMA [OFF/ON]**: RM-LP55
- **GAMMA MASTER LEVEL**: RM-LP55
- **KNEE MASTER LEVEL**: RM-LP55
- **TITLE [OFF/ON]**: RM-LP55
- **TITLE POSITION**: RM-LP55
- **TITLE CLEAR**: RM-LP55
- **H PHASE**: RM-LP55
- **SC CORRSE [OFF/ON]**: RM-LP55

---

### Connect a Remote Control Unit (RM-LP55/RM-LP57) (Cont’d)

**Connect a Remote Control Unit (RM-LP55/RM-LP57) (Cont’d)**

Remote Control Unit Functions List

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BAR [OFF/ON]</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONTOUR [OFF/ON]</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONTOUR V/H LEVEL</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRIS [MANUAL/AUTO]</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRIS DETECT</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHT BAL</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUTO WHITE</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MANUAL WHITE BALANCE</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAIN</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LS/LUX</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-36B</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALC/ALC</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEA [OFF/ON]</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHUTTER</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZOOM</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FOCUS</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TELEZOOM [OFF/ON]</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MASTER BLACK LEVEL</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAMMA [OFF/ON]</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAMMA MASTER LEVEL</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KNEE MASTER LEVEL</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TITLE [OFF/ON]</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TITLE POSITION</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TITLE CLEAR</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H PHASE</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SC CORRSE [OFF/ON]</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Available</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Setting Menu Screens

Make the settings while observing the LCD monitor or the viewfinder screen.
If the ANALOG OUT CHAR. item or SDI OUT CHAR. item on the OTHERS[1/2] screen is set to ON, the menu screen can also be viewed on a monitor connected to the video signal output connector.

1. Set the POWER switch to ON.
2. Set the mode of the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 with the CAM/VTR button. (Camera mode or VTR mode)
3. Press the STATUS button for 1 second or longer.  
   • The TOP MENU screen appears.

4. Select the menu screen to be set. 
   Rotate the SHUTTER dial to align the cursor (►) with the menu screen to be set, and then press the SHUTTER dial. 
   • The selected menu screen appears.

5. Select the menu item on the menu screen. 
   Rotate the SHUTTER dial to align the cursor (►) with the item to be set, and then press the SHUTTER dial. 
   • The setting area starts blinking, and the setting can now be made.

6. Change the setting. 
   Rotate the SHUTTER dial to change the setting, and then press the SHUTTER dial. 
   • The setting area stops blinking and the setting is entered.

To change multiple items, repeat the procedures in steps 5. and 6. above.

7. Return to the TOP MENU screen. 
   Rotate the SHUTTER dial to align the cursor (►) with the PAGE BACK item, and then press the SHUTTER dial. 
   • To change settings on other menu screens, repeat the procedures in steps 4. to 7. above.

8. To save the set contents in FILE, select the FILE MANAGE menu screen and perform the operations for saving to file. 
   • See "FILE MANAGE Menu Screen" on page 100.

To return to the normal screen after completing the settings, use either of the following methods. 
Press the STATUS button or return to the TOP MENU screen and align the cursor (►) with the EXIT item, and then press the SHUTTER dial.

MEMO
- While the menu screen is being displayed, the USER1, USER2 and USER3 buttons can also perform menu operations. 
  USER1 button : Raises the cursor (►)/Changes the setting
  USER2 button : Lowers the cursor (▼)/Changes the setting
  USER3 button : Confirms the menu item/Confirms the setting
- The menu screen is not displayed when switching between Camera and VTR mode (VTR indicator flashes).
Different menu screens are displayed depending on whether the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 is in the Camera mode or in the VTR mode. In the VTR mode, the CAMERA OPERATION, CAMERA PROCESS and SWITCH MODE menu screens are not displayed.

### VIDEO FORMAT[1/2] Menu Screen

The VIDEO FORMAT menu screen consists of two screens (1/2 screen, 2/2 screen). In VTR mode, this screen consists of one screen.

* This is not displayed in VTR mode.

#### Item Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)

- **VIDEO FORMAT..** Displays the menu screen for setting the video format for shooting and playing back video.
  - **FRAME RATE** Sets the frame rate for shooting.
    - **U model**
      - 60/30 : Shoots at 480/60i, 720/60p, 720/30p.
    - **E model**
      - 60/30 : Shoots at 720/60p, 720/30p.
- **CAMERA OPERATION..** Displays a menu screen for setting the operation mode for camera shooting.
  - **EXECUTE** : Executes the settings.
  - **CANCEL** : Cancels the settings.
- **CAMERA PROCESS..** Displays a menu screen for adjustments of the picture quality of the camera image.
  - **EXECUTE** : Executes the settings.
  - **CANCEL** : Cancels the settings.
- **SWITCH MODE..** Displays the menu screens related to the camera switch functions.
  - **EXECUTE** : Executes the settings.
  - **CANCEL** : Cancels the settings.
- **AUDIO/MIC..** Displays a menu screen related to audio.
  - **EXECUTE** : Executes the settings.
  - **CANCEL** : Cancels the settings.
- **TUMBCLOCK..** Displays a menu screen for setting the time code, user's bit data, date and time.
  - **EXECUTE** : Executes the settings.
  - **CANCEL** : Cancels the settings.
- **OTHERS..** Displays a menu screen for setting other functions and to display the hour meter.
  - **EXECUTE** : Executes the settings.
  - **CANCEL** : Cancels the settings.
- **FILE MANAGE..** Displays the FILE MANAGE menu screen.
  - **EXECUTE** : Executes the settings.
  - **CANCEL** : Cancels the settings.

### FRAME RATE

- **Model**
  - **U model**
    - 60/30 : Shoots at 480/60i, 720/60p, 720/30p.
  - **E model**
    - 60/30 : Shoots at 720/60p, 720/30p.

### 1080i CAMERA

- **Selects whether or not to output camera images in HDV1080i signals. HDV1080i signals are output from component output of the Y/Pb/Pr terminal or HD/SD-SDI output terminal. However, they are not recorded on this device.**
  - **OFF** : No HDV1080i signal is output. Output setting of camera images is based on the REC settings below.
  - **ON** : HDV1080i signal is output. (60/30 Frame rate: 1080/60i, 50/25 Frame rate: 1080/50i) 480/60i or 576/50i signals are output from the VIDEO OUT terminal.

### 1080i CAMERA

- **Selects whether or not to output camera images in HDV1080i signals. HDV1080i signals are output from component output of the Y/Pb/Pr terminal or HD/SD-SDI output terminal. However, they are not recorded on this device.**
  - **OFF** : No HDV1080i signal is output. Output setting of camera images is based on the REC settings below.
  - **ON** : HDV1080i signal is output. (60/30 Frame rate: 1080/60i, 50/25 Frame rate: 1080/50i) 480/60i or 576/50i signals are output from the VIDEO OUT terminal.

### REC

- **Sets the video format for shooting. (Can only be displayed and set in camera mode)**
  - You can set the following according to the FRAME RATE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>FRAME RATE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DV-60i</td>
<td>DV format: Shoots using a 480/60i signal.</td>
<td>(U model Only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDV-HD260P</td>
<td>HDV format: Shoots using a 720/60p signal.</td>
<td>60/30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDV-HD260P</td>
<td>HDV format: Shoots using a 720/30p signal.</td>
<td>50/25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDV-HD260P</td>
<td>HDV format: Shoots using a 720/60p signal.</td>
<td>60/30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDV-HD260P</td>
<td>HDV format: Shoots using a 720/30p signal.</td>
<td>50/25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DV-50i</td>
<td>DV format: Shoots using a 576/50i signal.</td>
<td>(E model Only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DV-25P</td>
<td>DV format: Shoots using a 576/25p signal.</td>
<td>(E model Only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DV-24P</td>
<td>DV format: Shoots using a 480/24p signal.</td>
<td>(U model Only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DV-24PA</td>
<td>DV format: Shoots using a 480/24p signal.</td>
<td>(U model Only)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### MEMO

- **The cursor ( ) does not move to this item when this device is in VTR mode or is ejecting a tape.**
- **The cursor ( ) does not move to this item when VTR is activated.**
- **The cursor ( ) does not move to this item when this device is recording.**
- **The cursor ( ) does not move to this item when the SHUTTER dial is pressed.**
- **If you change the FRAME RATE item setting, the system is rebooted.** See page 54.

* This is not displayed in VTR mode.
VIDEO FORMAT[1/2] Menu Screen

* This is not displayed in VTR mode.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ASPECT</td>
<td>Sets the screen size for the recording video signal. <em>(Can only be displayed and set in camera mode)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:3</td>
<td>Outputs the video with an aspect ratio of 4:3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:9</td>
<td>Outputs the video with an aspect ratio of 16:9.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEMO</td>
<td>- When the format setting is HDV, the ASPECT item is fixed at 16:9. &quot;[16:9]&quot; is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- The synchronous video signal is momentarily disturbed when the ASPECT item setting is switched.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDV PB OUTPUT</td>
<td>When playing back an HDV recorded tape, set video format for component output from the Y/PbPr terminal or SDI output from the HD/SD-SDI output terminal. You can set the following depending on the FRAME RATE of the HDV recorded tape.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>720P</td>
<td>Converts the signal being recorded on tape to 720P and outputs it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>720S</td>
<td>Converts the signal being recorded on tape to 720S and outputs it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HQ/HD</td>
<td>Converts the signal being recorded on tape to HD and outputs it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEMO</td>
<td>- If you convert video recorded in HDV format to DV format and output it, the colors may change.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- This item is also applied to EE images when HDV signals are input to the IEEE1394 terminal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Fixed at NATIVE during DV recorded tape playback or DV signal input.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOWN CON. [HDV]</td>
<td>Set the style to display down-converted images in aspect ratio 4:3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQUEEZE</td>
<td>Image that is squeezed horizontally is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LETTER</td>
<td>Wide image with the top and bottom blackened is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEMO</td>
<td>- This setting is only valid in HDV mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- In DV mode, the style becomes SQUEEZE regardless of the setting of this item.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Setting Description FRAME RATE
NATIVE Outputs the signal being recorded on the tape. 50/25
720P Converts the signal being recorded on tape to 720P and outputs it. 50/25
720S Converts the signal being recorded on tape to 720S and outputs it. 24
HQ/HD Converts the signal being recorded on tape to HD and outputs it. 50/25
PAL Converts the signal being recorded on tape to 576i and outputs it. 50/25

MEMO
- If you convert video recorded in HDV format to DV format and output it, the colors may change.
- This item is also applied to EE images when HDV signals are input to the IEEE1394 terminal.
- Fixed at NATIVE during DV recorded tape playback or DV signal input.

NEXT PAGE To display the VIDEO FORMAT[2/2] menu screen, move the cursor to this position and press the SHUTTER dial.

PAGE BACK The TOP MENU returns when the SHUTTER dial is pressed with the cursor at this position.

VIDEO FORMAT[2/2] Menu Screen

* This is not displayed in VTR mode.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PB TAPE</td>
<td>Selects whether to automatically detect the playback tape video format or play back only a particular format. Normally, use the &quot;AUTO&quot; setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUTO</td>
<td>During tape playback, the format signal is switched automatically and played back.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DV</td>
<td>During tape playback, only the part of the tape recorded in DV format is played back.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDV</td>
<td>During tape playback, only the part of the tape recorded in HDV format is played back.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DV/HDV</td>
<td>During tape playback, only the part of the tape recorded in DV format is played back.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEMO</td>
<td>If you play back a tape containing both DV and HDV formats, the video signal is disturbed when the signal is switched.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HD/SD-SDI OUT</td>
<td>Sets whether or not to output SDI (Serial Digital Interface) signals from the HD/SD SDI OUT terminal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>No output. Output on. Embedded audio and time code are also output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ON</td>
<td>Output on. Embedded audio and time code are also output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OUTPUT TERM. [DV]</td>
<td>Sets the output image format for the Y/PbPr terminal in DV format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y/PbPr</td>
<td>Outputs analog component signals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RGB</td>
<td>Outputs analog RGB signals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y/C</td>
<td>Outputs YC separate signals. Signals are output from terminals as shown in the table below depending on the settings.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Terminal</th>
<th>Setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Y/PbPr</td>
<td>Y/C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RGB</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y/C</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| MEMO       | - SYNC signals are added to all channels for RGB signals. |
|            | - In HDV format, signals are output in analog component format regardless of these settings. |

SET UP Selects whether to add a setup signal to the video signal output from the video signal output connector. In DV format, a setup signal can be added to COMPONENT output and Y/C output. (When Y/PbPr or Y/C is set for OUTPUT TERM [DV].)
* You can also select a setup signal in the IEEE1394 signal input mode.
* You can also select a setup signal in the IEEE1394 signal input mode.
* 0.0% : No setup signal is added. |
| 7.5%       | A setup signal is added. |

Initial settings: U model: 7.5%  E model: 0.0%

MEMO
* When recording composite video signals from an external device, set this item according to whether the input signals include a setup signal. |
* See "Recording Composite Video Signals from an External Device" on page 65. |
* When the FRAME RATE item is set to 50/25, this item is not displayed. |

PAGE BACK When the cursor is in this position, press the SHUTTER dial to the VIDEO FORMAT[1/2] menu screen.
The CAMERA OPERATION menu screen is only displayed in the Camera mode.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AE LEVEL*1</td>
<td>For adjusting the image level when using auto iris. &quot;ALC&quot; or &quot;EEI&quot;. Increase value : Increases level. Decrease value : Decreases level. (Settings: –3, –2, NORMAL (0), –1, 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALC MAX</td>
<td>Sets the maximum &quot;ALC&quot; value to automatically change the signal intensity level depending on the brightness. (Setting: 6 dB, 12 dB, 18 dB)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRESET TEMP.</td>
<td>Sets the basic color temperature when the [WHT.BAL] white balance selector switch on page 15 is in the PRST (PRESET) position. 3200K : Sets the basic color temperature to 3200K. (Use for light sources with a low color temperature, such as halogen lamps.) 5600K : Sets the basic color temperature to 5600K. (Use for light sources with a high color temperature, such as sunlight.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRESET TEMP.</td>
<td>Sets the basic color temperature to 3200K. (Use for light sources with a low color temperature, such as halogen lamps.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMOOTH TRANS*1</td>
<td>Smoothens the transition when the [GAIN] switch on page 15, or [GAIN] switch on page 15 is switched over and achieves gradual change in place of sudden change. Increase value : Increases level. Decrease value : Decreases level. (Settings: –3, –2, NORMAL (0), –1, 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BARS*1</td>
<td>Sets whether or not color bars are output. (This is fixed at &quot;OFF&quot; when in FULL AUTO mode)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MEMO

This item does not function when the FAW item on the SWITCH MODE menu screen is set to "PRESET".

The CAMERA PROCESS menu screen consists of two screens. (1/2 screen, 2/2 screen) The CAMERA PROCESS menu screen is only displayed in camera mode.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MASTER BLACK*2</td>
<td>Adjusts the pedestal level (master black) that serves as the reference black. Increase the number : Raises the pedestal level. Decrease the number : Lowers the pedestal level. (Settings: MIN (–10), –9, –8, NORMAL (0), –7, –6, –5, –4, –3, –2, –1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, MAX (10))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DETAIL*2</td>
<td>Adjusts the contour (detail) sharpness level. Increase the number : Sharpens the contour. Decrease the number : Softens the contour. (Settings: OFF, MIN (–10), –9, –8, NORMAL (0), –7, –6, –5, –4, –3, –2, –1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, MAX (10))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H/FREQUENCY*1</td>
<td>Changes the horizontal contour compensation frequency for the contours (details). Set this as appropriate for the subject. LOW : Enhances low frequency bands. MIDDLE : Enhances middle frequency bands. HIGH : Enhances high frequency bands.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V/FREQUENCY*1</td>
<td>Changes the vertical contour compensation frequency for the contours (details). Compensates for distortion when outputting progressive video to an interlaced monitor. LOW : Enhances low frequency bands. MIDDLE : Enhances middle frequency bands. HIGH : Enhances high frequency bands.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SKIN DETECT*2</td>
<td>Sets ON/OFF for the skin detail function. OFF : Turns off the skin detail function. ON : Turns on the skin detail function. (Softens detected skin color area details.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LEVEL</td>
<td>Sets the contour compensation level (amount of softening) for the skin detail function. This can only be selected when the SKIN DETECT item is set to ON. LOW : Low contour compensation level (amount of softening) MIDDLE : Medium contour compensation level (amount of softening) HIGH : High contour compensation level (amount of softening)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MEMO

This item does not function when the FAW item on the SWITCH MODE menu screen is set to "PRESET".

REMOTE appears as the setting value of this item when the remote control unit is connected.

When the REC item on the VIDEO FORMAT[1/2] menu is set to "DV-60I" or "DV-50I", "-----" is displayed and this cannot be selected.

REMOTE appears as the setting value of this item when the remote control unit is connected.
### Menu Screen

#### Item | Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)
--- | ---
**BLACK** | Changes the gain in dark areas. Change this depending on the video signal being shot. **ON**: Normal status. **STRETCH**: Enhances the dark areas of the video so the contrast between light and dark is more visible by stretching the signal only in the dark areas. **COMPRESS**: If the video was shot is bright overall and lacking in contrast, the gain in the dark areas is compressed, which adds contrast. Set compression level with **COMPRESS LEVEL** below.

**WHITE CLIP** | Sets the white clipping point on input video signals with a high luminance level. **108%**: The white clipping point is set at a luminance level of 108%. **100%**: The white clipping point is set at a luminance level of 100%. If the screen is too white at 108%, set it to 100%.

**KNEE** | Sets whether to run the knee function, which compresses video signals over a certain level to render the tonality in the highlight areas, automatically or manually. Set **MANUAL** when you want to check the bright areas, and adjust the knee point manually. **AUTO**: Adjusts the knee point automatically according to the luminance level. **LEVEL**: You can change the luminance level in the "LEVEL" item.

**WHITE BALANCE** | When the cursor is in this position and you press the SHUTTER dial once, the screen switches to the WHITE BALANCE menu screen. **SKIN COLOR ADJUST** | When the cursor is in this position and you press the SHUTTER dial once, the screen switches to the SKIN COLOR ADJUST menu screen.

**DNR** | Selects whether or not to set the noise reduction. **ON**: Noise reduction is not performed. **OFF**: Noise reduction is functioning.

**DIF** | Applies digital noise reduction function to the tape recording signal, HD component output signal, and the IEEE1394 output signal in CAMERA mode. When camcorder’s picture is noisy, because of low light conditions, you can improve picture’s S/N by turning DIF on. **OFF**: Noise reduction is not performed. **ON**: Sets noise reduction.

**COLOR GAIN** | Adjusts the video signal color level. **OFF**: No gain. **STANDARD**: Sets a normal color matrix. **CINEMA**: Sets the color matrix close to the characteristics of a movie screen.

**WHITE PICTURE** | When the cursor is in this position and you press the SHUTTER dial once, the screen switches to the WHITE PICTURE menu screen.

**PAGE BACK** | When the cursor is in this position, press the SHUTTER dial to return to the CAMERA PROCESS[1/2] menu screen.

#### Advanced Process

#### Item | Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)
--- | ---
**STRETCH LEVEL** | The amount of stretching decreases from **LEVEL1** to **LEVEL2** to **LEVEL3** to **LEVEL4** to **LEVEL5**. **Settings**: **LEVEL1**, **LEVEL2**, **LEVEL3**, **LEVEL4**, **LEVEL5**.

**COMPRESS LEVEL** | The amount of compression increases from **LEVEL1** to **LEVEL2** to **LEVEL3** to **LEVEL4** to **LEVEL5**. **Settings**: **LEVEL1**, **LEVEL2**, **LEVEL3**, **LEVEL4**, **LEVEL5**.

**COLOR MATRIX** | Sets the color matrix. **OFF**: No gamma curve correction. **STANDARD**: Sets a normal gamma curve. **CINEMA**: Sets the color matrix close to the characteristics of a movie screen.

**GAMMA** | Adjusts the gamma curve to determine how black is rendered. **STANDARD**: Sets a normal gamma curve. **CINEMA**: Sets to appear movie-like when viewing on a TV screen.

**WHITE CLIP** | Sets the white clipping point on input video signals with a high luminance level. **108%**: The white clipping point is set at a luminance level of 108%. **100%**: The white clipping point is set at a luminance level of 100%. If the screen is too white at 108%, set it to 100%.

**KNEE** | Sets whether to run the knee function, which compresses video signals over a certain level to render the tonality in the highlight areas, automatically or manually. Set **MANUAL** when you want to check the bright areas, and adjust the knee point manually. **AUTO**: Adjusts the knee point automatically according to the luminance level. **LEVEL**: You can change the luminance level in the "LEVEL" item.

**WHITE BALANCE** | When the cursor is in this position and you press the SHUTTER dial once, the screen switches to the WHITE BALANCE menu screen.

**SKIN COLOR ADJUST** | When the cursor is in this position and you press the SHUTTER dial once, the screen switches to the SKIN COLOR ADJUST menu screen.

**PAGE BACK** | When the cursor is in this position, press the SHUTTER dial to return to the CAMERA PROCESS[1/2] menu screen.

---

* REMOTE appears as the setting value of this item when the remote control unit is connected.
COLOR MATRIX ADJUST Menu Screen

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>R GAIN</td>
<td>For manually adjusting the shading of the R axis of the color matrix (red and cyan). Increase the number: Strengthens red and cyan. Decrease the number: Reduces red and cyan. [Settings: MIN (–5), –4, NORMAL (0), –3, MAX (5)]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R ROTATION</td>
<td>For manually adjusting the color phase of the R axis of the color matrix (red and cyan). Increase the number: Increases yellowishness of red color and bluishness of cyan color. Decrease the number: Increases bluishness of red color and greenishness of cyan color. [Settings: MIN (–5), –4, NORMAL (0), –3, MAX (5)]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G GAIN</td>
<td>For manually adjusting the shading of the G axis of the color matrix (green and magenta). Increase the number: Enhances green and magenta. Decrease the number: Reduces green and magenta. [Settings: MIN (–5), –4, NORMAL (0), –3, MAX (5)]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G ROTATION</td>
<td>For manually adjusting the color phase of the G axis of the color matrix (green and magenta). Increase the number: Increases yellowishness of green color and bluishness of magenta color. Decrease the number: Increases bluishness of green color and reddishness of magenta color. [Settings: MIN (–5), –4, NORMAL (0), –3, MAX (5)]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B GAIN</td>
<td>For manually adjusting the shading of the B axis of the color matrix (blue and yellow). Increase the number: Enhances blue and yellow. Decrease the number: Reduces blue and yellow. [Settings: MIN (–5), –4, NORMAL (0), –3, MAX (5)]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B ROTATION</td>
<td>For manually adjusting the color phase of the B axis of the color matrix (blue and yellow). Increase the number: Increases reddishness of blue color and greenishness of yellow color. Decrease the number: Increases greenishness of blue color and reddishness of yellow color. [Settings: MIN (–5), –4, NORMAL (0), –3, MAX (5)]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PAGE BACK: Press the SHUTTER dial to return to the ADVANCED PROCESS screen when cursor is at this position.

WHITE BALANCE Menu Screen

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WHITE Paint-B*1</td>
<td>Adjusts the R (red) component when in AWB (Auto White Balance) mode. Increase the number: Strengthens the red. Decrease the number: Weakens the red. [Settings: MIN (–32), –31, NORMAL (0), –30, MAX (31)]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHITE Paint-B*1</td>
<td>Memo: You can select this when A or B is set for the [WHT.BAL] switch on the right panel of this device. All settings can be made for A and B individually. (When “PRESET” is set, “-----” is displayed and this cannot be selected.) When you press the AWB (Auto White Balance) button and readjust the white balance, WHITE PAINT R becomes “NORMAL.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHITE Paint-B*1</td>
<td>Memo: When you press the AWB (Auto White Balance) button and readjust the white balance, WHITE PAINT &lt;B&gt; becomes “NORMAL.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHADING</td>
<td>Adjusts white shading. PRESET: No white shading adjustment. MANUAL: Enables white shading adjustment. [See “White Shading Adjustment” on page 53.]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LEVEL R</td>
<td>When the SHADING item is set to MANUAL, adjusts the reds of white shading. Increase the number: Red at the bottom of the screen is suppressed and the top is enhanced. Decrease the number: Red at the top of the screen is suppressed and the bottom is enhanced. [Settings: MIN (–127) to –1, NORMAL (0) to 126, MAX]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LEVEL G</td>
<td>When the SHADING item is set to MANUAL, adjusts the greens of white shading. Increase the number: Green at the bottom of the screen is suppressed and the top is enhanced. Decrease the number: Green at the top of the screen is suppressed and the bottom is enhanced. [Settings: MIN (–127) to –1, NORMAL (0) to 126, MAX]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LEVEL B</td>
<td>When the SHADING item is set to MANUAL, adjusts the blues of white shading. Increase the number: Blue at the bottom of the screen is suppressed and the top is enhanced. Decrease the number: Blue at the top of the screen is suppressed and the bottom is enhanced. [Settings: MIN (–127) to –1, NORMAL (0) to 126, MAX]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PAGE BACK: When the cursor is in this position, press the SHUTTER dial to return to the ADVANCED PROCESS screen menu.

SKIN COLOR ADJUST Menu Screen

When you enter the SKIN COLOR ADJUST screen, the areas where the skin detail function is applied are displayed in color, and other areas are displayed in black and white.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SKIN COLOR DET</td>
<td>Sets the color used by the skin detail function. STOP: Stops loading the color used by the skin detail function. EXECUTE: Loads the color used by the skin detail function. [See “Using the Skin Detail Function” on page 104.]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SKIN COLOR RANGE</td>
<td>Adjusts the range of skin colors to which the skin detail function is applied. Adjust as you check the color range. Increase the number: Widens the range. Decrease the number: Narrows the range. [Settings: NARROW (–10) to –9, NORMAL (0) to 9, WIDE (10)]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MEMO: When the COLOR GAIN item is “OFF” on the ADVANCED PROCESS menu screen, only the areas where the skin detail function is running are displayed using skin colors.

PAGE BACK: When the cursor is in this position, press the SHUTTER dial to return to the ADVANCED PROCESS menu screen.

*1 REMOTE appears as the setting value of this item when the remote control unit is connected.
The SWITCH MODE menu screen is only displayed in camera mode.

### SWITCH MODE Menu Screen

You can set the following using the REC item on the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen. (This is fixed at EEl when in FULL AUTO mode.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Setting for STEP</th>
<th>Setting for VARIABLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>REC Item</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DV-60I</td>
<td>1/25, 1/50, 1/100</td>
<td>1/4000, 1/10000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDV-HD60P</td>
<td>1/25, 1/50, 1/100</td>
<td>1/4000, 1/10000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDV-HD30P</td>
<td>1/25, 1/50, 1/100</td>
<td>1/4000, 1/10000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDV-HD25P</td>
<td>1/25, 1/50, 1/100</td>
<td>1/4000, 1/10000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDV-HD20P</td>
<td>1/25, 1/50, 1/100</td>
<td>1/4000, 1/10000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDV-HD10P</td>
<td>1/25, 1/50, 1/100</td>
<td>1/4000, 1/10000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDV-HD5P</td>
<td>1/25, 1/50, 1/100</td>
<td>1/4000, 1/10000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDV-HD1P</td>
<td>1/25, 1/50, 1/100</td>
<td>1/4000, 1/10000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDV-1P</td>
<td>1/25, 1/50, 1/100</td>
<td>1/4000, 1/10000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDV-0P</td>
<td>1/25, 1/50, 1/100</td>
<td>1/4000, 1/10000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Setting Description**

- **SHUTTER**
  - Sets the fixed value (STEP) for values that can change using the SHUTTER dial on the right panel or the VARIABLE used when shooting computer monitors.
  - **FUNCTION**: Switches the shutter speed using fixed values.
  - **INITIAL VALUE**: Set when shooting a computer monitor, etc.
  - **NOTE**: This is not displayed in VTR mode.

- **TEST TONE**
  - **ON**: A test audio signal is output.
  - **OFF**: No test audio signal is output.

- **MIC WIND CUT**
  - **1/7.5, 1/15, 1/30, 1/60, 1/120, 1/250, 1/500, 1/1000, 1/2000, 1/4000, 1/8000, 1/16000**
  - Selects whether to cut the lows (low frequency bands) from the audio input signal.
  - **1/4K**: Use this when you want to reduce wind sounds from the microphone.
  - **1/4K**: Cuts the low frequencies in the audio from both the INPUT1 and INPUT2 terminals.

- **MIC INPUT LEVEL**
  - **ON**: A test audio signal is output.
  - **OFF**: No test audio signal is output.

- **INPUT1 MIC REF**
  - **ON**: A test audio signal is output.
  - **OFF**: No test audio signal is output.

- **AUTO MODE**
  - **ON**: A test audio signal is output.
  - **OFF**: No test audio signal is output.

- **INPUT1 MIC REF**
  - **ON**: A test audio signal is output.
  - **OFF**: No test audio signal is output.

- **AUDIO LIMIT**
  - **ON**: A test audio signal is output.
  - **OFF**: No test audio signal is output.

- **USER1**
  - **USER2**
  - **USER3**

- **FAW**
  - Sets the positions to assign the FAW (Full Auto White Balance) function to the [WHT BAL] white balance selector switch on page 15. (Fixed at FAW when in FULL AUTO mode)

- **GAIN**
  - **NONE**
  - **A**
  - **B**

- **GAIN**
  - **GAIN L**
  - **GAIN M**
  - **GAIN H**

- **USER1**
  - **USER2**
  - **USER3**

- **NEXT PAGE**
  - To display the AUDIO/MIC[2/2] menu screen, move the cursor to this position and press the SHUTTER dial.

### AUDIO/MIC[1/2] Menu Screen

The AUDIO/MIC menu screen consists of two screens (1/2 screen, 2/2 screen).

In VTR mode, the screen changes to the AUDIO menu screen.

- **TEST TONE**
  - **ON**: A test audio signal is output.
  - **OFF**: No test audio signal is output.

- **MIC WIND CUT**
  - **1/7.5, 1/15, 1/30, 1/60, 1/120, 1/250, 1/500, 1/1000, 1/2000, 1/4000, 1/8000, 1/16000**
  - Selects whether to cut the lows (low frequency bands) from the audio input signal.
  - **1/4K**: Use this when you want to reduce wind sounds from the microphone.
  - **1/4K**: Cuts the low frequencies in the audio from both the INPUT1 and INPUT2 terminals.

- **MIC INPUT LEVEL**
  - **ON**: A test audio signal is output.
  - **OFF**: No test audio signal is output.

- **INPUT1 MIC REF**
  - **ON**: A test audio signal is output.
  - **OFF**: No test audio signal is output.

- **AUTO MODE**
  - **ON**: A test audio signal is output.
  - **OFF**: No test audio signal is output.
AUDIO/MIC[2/2] Menu Screen

In VTR mode, the screen changes to the AUDIO menu screen.

### Item Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AUDIO MONITOR</td>
<td>Selects whether stereo or mixed audio is output from the PHONES jack when the MONITOR SELECT switch is set to BOTH.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEARCH AUDIO [DV]</td>
<td>Selects whether to output audio when searching a tape recorded in DV format. (This also includes slow playback.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FILTER</td>
<td>Selects whether or not the FILTER position of this device is displayed in the status display on the LCD monitor or in the viewfinder. (STATUS 1 screen)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAFETY ZONE</td>
<td>Selects whether or not the safety zone is shown on the LCD monitor or in the viewfinder. (STATUS 1 screen)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CENTER MARK</td>
<td>Selects whether or not a center mark is displayed when the safety zone is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COLOR</td>
<td>Sets the display color for focusing when running the FOCUS ASSIST function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LEVEL</td>
<td>Sets the display range of the focal area when the FOCUS ASSIST function is in use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

LCD/VF[1/4] Menu Screen

The LCD/VF menu screen consists of four screens. (1/4 screen, 2/4 screen, 3/4 screen, 4/4 screen)
The LCD/VF[1/4] menu screen can only be set in camera mode.

In VTR mode, this screen consists of two screens. (1/2 screen, 2/2 screen)

### Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ZEBRA</td>
<td>Switches the luminance level of the subject sections where the zebra pattern is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>60-70% : Zebra pattern is displayed in sections with luminance levels between 60% and 70%.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>70-80% : Zebra pattern is displayed in sections with luminance levels between 70% and 80%.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>85-95% : Zebra pattern is displayed in sections with luminance levels between 85% and 95%.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OVER95% : Zebra pattern is displayed in sections with luminance levels over 95%.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OVER100% : Zebra pattern is displayed in sections with luminance levels over 100%.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. NO/IRIS IND.</td>
<td>Selects whether or not the f-number of the lens iris/iris level mark is displayed in the status display on the LCD monitor or in the viewfinder. (STATUS 1 screen)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OFF : Iris level mark is not displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ON : Iris level mark is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEARCH AUDIO [DV]</td>
<td>Selects whether to output audio when searching a tape recorded in DV format. (This also includes slow playback.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OFF : Audio is output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ON : Audio is not output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FILTER</td>
<td>Selects whether or not the FILTER position of this device is displayed in the status display on the LCD monitor or in the viewfinder. (STATUS 1 screen)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OFF : FILTER position is not displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ON : FILTER position is displayed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 SAFETY ZONE and CENTER MARK will not be displayed when this device is in VTR mode (PLAY, STL, FWD, REV).
The LCD/VF[2/4] menu screen can only be set in camera mode.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LCD MIRROR MODE</td>
<td>Sets the image display method when the LCD monitor is in counterview position.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIRROR</td>
<td>Inverted image is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIRROR/ NORMAL</td>
<td>NORMAL/MIRROR is set when the SHUTTER dial is pressed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEMO</td>
<td>MIRROR setting is disabled when color bar is displayed or status is in magnified size.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>See “Outputting Color Bars” on page 105.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NEXT PAGE: When you display the LCD/VF[3/4] menu screen, move the cursor to this position and press the SHUTTER dial.

PAGE BACK: When the cursor is in this position, press the SHUTTER dial to return to the LCD/VF[1/4] menu screen.

---


[1/2] screen is displayed in the VTR mode.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VIDEO FORMAT</td>
<td>Selects whether to display the video format in the status display on the LCD monitor or the viewfinder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Camera mode: STATUS 1 screen, VTR mode: STATUS screen)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ON: Displays the video format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OFF: Does not display the video format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In camera mode: Displays the video format set in the REC item on the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In VTR mode: Displays the video format recorded on the playback tape or the video format input from the IEEE1394 connector.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TAPE REMAIN</td>
<td>Selects whether or not the remaining tape time (minutes) is shown in the status display on the LCD monitor or in the viewfinder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Camera mode: STATUS 1 screen, VTR mode: STATUS screen)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ON: Displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OFF: Not displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TC/UB</td>
<td>Selects whether or not the time code or user’s bits data should be shown in the status display on the LCD monitor or in the viewfinder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Camera mode: STATUS 1 screen, VTR mode: STATUS screen)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ON: Displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OFF: Not displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A/VUJO</td>
<td>Selects whether the audio level meters should be shown in the status display on the LCD monitor or in the viewfinder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Camera mode: STATUS 1 screen, VTR mode: STATUS screen)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ON: Displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OFF: Not displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BATTERY INFO</td>
<td>For setting the status display method when loading the Anton-Bauer Battery.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The status will be displayed on the LCD screen and the viewfinder screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(In camera mode, only displayed when in STATUS 1 screen.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VOLTAGE</td>
<td>Indicates battery voltage in 0.1 V steps [V]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAPA%</td>
<td>Remaining battery is shown in percentage [%]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIME</td>
<td>Remaining battery is shown in minutes [min]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VOLTAGE and CAPA% can be selected when using an IDX Endura battery. When TIME is set, VOLTAGE is disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEMO</td>
<td>When TIME or CAPA% is selected, the battery indicator displayed before the value changes depending on the remaining battery level:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12% or less 12% to less than 50% 50% or more</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When remaining battery level becomes less than 12%, the display changes to “RES”.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When CALIBRATION is required from the battery, the display switches between TIME (CAPA%) display (30 seconds) and “CAL” display (2 seconds) repeatedly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For CALIBRATION, refer to the instruction manual of Anton-Bauer Battery.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Please use the remaining battery level and remaining time as a reference for shooting duration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHUTTER DISP</td>
<td>Sets the shutter display method to seconds or angles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SEC: Seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DEG: Degrees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEMO</td>
<td>This item is available when REC on the VIDEO FORMAT[1/2] menu screen is set to HDV-HD24P, DV-24P, DV-24PA, HDV-HD25P, or DV-25P.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Shutter display method is fixed to SEC for other settings.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NEXT PAGE: Camera mode: To display the LCD/VF[4/4] menu screen, move the cursor to this position and press the SHUTTER dial. |
VTR mode: To display the LCD/VF[2/4] menu screen, move the cursor to this position and press the SHUTTER dial. |

PAGE BACK: Camera mode: When the cursor is in this position, press the SHUTTER dial to return to the TOP MENU screen. |
VTR mode: When the cursor is in this position, press the SHUTTER dial to return to the TOP MENU screen.
**Menu Screens**

### LCD/VF[4/4] Menu Screen

(2/2) screen is displayed in the VTR mode.

* This is not displayed in VTR mode.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LCD+VF</td>
<td>Selects the LCD monitor and viewfinder display switching method.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OFF : Turns off the viewfinder display when the LCD monitor is opened.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ON : Viewfinder always displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MEMO : When this item is set to ON, the contents displayed on the LCD monitor can be changed with the DISPLAY button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCD CONTRAST</td>
<td>Adjusts the contrast of the LCD.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Settings: MIN (–5), –4, NORMAL (0), 4, MAX (6))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VF CONTRAST</td>
<td>Adjusts the contrast of the viewfinder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Settings: MIN (–5), –4, NORMAL (0), 4, MAX (5))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLACK &amp; WHITE*</td>
<td>Selects the LCD monitor and viewfinder display style.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COLOR</td>
<td>Displays the image in color.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BW &amp; W : Displays the image in black and white.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MEMO : Characters are always displayed in color.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VF SIGNAL</td>
<td>Sets the image format output from the Viewfinder connector on page 16.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RGB : RGB signals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>COMPONENT : Component signals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>COMPOSITE : Composite signals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MEMO : * Set this to RGB when using the supplied viewfinder. The supplied viewfinder will not function properly when set to another setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* When this is set to Y or COMPOSITE in the HDV mode, images are not output from the [Y/Pu/Pn] terminal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* When the VF-P400 viewfinder (sold separately) is connected to the Viewfinder connector, set this to Y to view HDV format images with the VF-P400.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* When this is set to COMPONENT or COMPOSITE, the following occurs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* FOCUS ASSIST and SKIN AREA are not displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* When this is set to COMPONENT, the following restrictions are applied in HDV mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Set output of characters from the viewfinder terminal with ON/OFF in ANALOG OUT CHAR. item on the OTHER [5/6] menu screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* Also set ZEBRA output from the viewfinder terminal with ON/OFF in ANALOG OUT CHAR. item (When the ZEBRA switch is ON).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* When ZEBRA is set to ON, ZEBRA is also displayed for COMPONENT output from the [Y/Pu/Pn] terminal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAGE BACK</td>
<td>Camera mode:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When the cursor is in this position, press the SHUTTER dial to return to the LCD/VF[1/2] menu screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VTR mode:</td>
<td>When the cursor is in this position, press the SHUTTER dial to return to the LCD/VF[3/4] menu screen.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TC/UB/CLOCK Menu Screen

Time codes (TC) and user’s bits (UB) can be set on this screen. Date and time is set on the TIME/DATE screen that can be reached from this screen.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TCG SOURCE</td>
<td>Selects the source of the time code generator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>INTERNAL : Uses the built-in time code generator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EXTERNAL : Uses the time code generator connected to the [TC IN] terminal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MEMO : * TC PRESET and UB PRESET are not available when set to EXTERNAL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* HEADER REC is disabled when set to EXTERNAL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* When this is set to EXTERNAL, the setting for TC DUPL is invalid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TC PRESET</td>
<td>To preset the time code.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EXECUTE : The set time code is confirmed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CANCEL : The set time code is cancelled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ZERO PRESET : Resets all time codes to “0”.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MEMO : When the “UB REC” item is set to “OFF”, “--------” is displayed and this cannot be selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UB PRESET</td>
<td>To preset the user’s bit data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EXECUTE : The set user’s bit data are confirmed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CANCEL : The set user’s bit data are cancelled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ZERO PRESET : Resets all user’s bits data to “0”.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MEMO : Characters are always displayed in color.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When the “UB REC” item is set to “OFF”, “--------” is displayed and this cannot be selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*1 This can be displayed and selected when 60/30 is set for the FRAME RATE item on the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen. (When 24 is set, this is fixed at “NON DROP” and “[NON DROP]” is displayed.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*2 This can be displayed and selected when 50/25 is set for the FRAME RATE item on the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TC DUPL.

Sets how to record the time code (TC) and user’s bits (UB) during IEEE1394 input of HDV/DV format.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MEMO : This is validated when TCG SOURCE is set to INTERNAL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* In HDV format, the UB set in this device is recorded regardless of the setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HEADER REC : To make settings related to the HEADER REC function, align the cursor with this position, and then press the SHUTTER dial.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* See “HEADER REC Menu Screen” on page 94.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TIME/DATE : To make settings related to the date and time, align the cursor with this position and then press the SHUTTER dial.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* See “TIME/DATE Menu Screen” on page 95.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAGE BACK</td>
<td>When the cursor is in this position, press the SHUTTER dial to return to the TOP MENU screen.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The HEADER REC menu screen is used for settings related to the HEADER REC function. See page 60.

**START KEY**
Sets whether the HEADER REC operation should be executed when the REC/VTR trigger button is pressed while the STOP button is pressed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DISABLE</td>
<td>HEADER REC operation is not executed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STOP+REC</td>
<td>HEADER REC operation is executed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TC DATA**
Sets the time code value for the point when the Record-Standby mode is engaged following completion of HEADER REC.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EXECUTE</td>
<td>Confirms the set time code.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZERO PRESET</td>
<td>Resets all time codes to &quot;0&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CANCEL</td>
<td>Clears the set time code.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The frame mode is set depending on the setting in the DROP FRAME item on the TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen.

*The time code value at the point when the Record-Standby mode is engaged may differ some frames from the value set for this item.*

**UB DATA**
Sets the user’s bits of the HEADER REC section.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EXECUTE</td>
<td>Confirms the set user’s bits.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZERO PRESET</td>
<td>Resets all user’s bits data to &quot;0&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CANCEL</td>
<td>Clears the user’s bits.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**BARS TIME**
Sets the duration (seconds) in which the color bar signal and test tone (1 kHz) is recorded during HEADER REC. (1-sec steps)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[0SEC - 30SEC - 99SEC]</td>
<td>Sets the duration (seconds) in which the color bar signal and test tone (1 kHz) is recorded during HEADER REC.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**BLACK TIME**
Sets the duration (seconds) in which the black signal is recorded during HEADER REC. (1-sec steps)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[0SEC - 30SEC - 99SEC]</td>
<td>Sets the duration (seconds) in which the black signal is recorded during HEADER REC.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PAGE BACK**
The TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen returns when the SHUTTER dial is pressed.

---

**DISPLAY**
Sets whether the date and time are shown in the status display on the LCD monitor or in the viewfinder.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>Not displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ON</td>
<td>Displayed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When a tape with time and date not recorded is played back, there will be no display of time and date even when this item is set to ON.

**DISPLAY MODE**
In the Camera mode, the date and time are displayed in accordance with the following settings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BARS+CAM</td>
<td>Date and time are always displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BARS</td>
<td>Date and time are displayed when the color bars are output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAM</td>
<td>Date and time are displayed when the camera images are output.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When the DISPLAY item is set to OFF, "---" is indicated and this item cannot be selected.

**DISPLAY STYLE**
Selects the style for the date and time display.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DATE+TIME</td>
<td>Date and time are displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DATE</td>
<td>Date only is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIME</td>
<td>Time only is displayed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When the DISPLAY item is set to OFF, "---" is indicated and this item cannot be selected.

**DATE STYLE**
Selects the style for the date display.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>YY/MM/DD</td>
<td>Displayed in the format of year/month/date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MM/DD/YY</td>
<td>Displayed in the format of month/date/year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DD/MM/YY</td>
<td>Displayed in the format of date/month/year.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Variation Range: U model: MM/DD/YY  E model: DD/MM/YY

When the DISPLAY item is set to OFF, "---" is indicated and this item cannot be selected.

**TIME STYLE**
Selects the style for the time display.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>24 HOUR</td>
<td>Displays the time using the 24-hour system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 HOUR</td>
<td>Displays the time using the 12-hour system.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When the DISPLAY item is set to OFF, "---" is indicated and this item cannot be selected.

**SEC DISPLAY**
Selects whether to display the seconds in the time display.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ON</td>
<td>Seconds are displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>Seconds are not displayed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When the DISPLAY item is set to OFF, "---" is indicated and this item cannot be selected.

**TIME SHIFT**
Sets the clock OFFSET time. (1H steps)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>–23H - –1H, OFF, +1H - +23H</td>
<td>Sets the clock OFFSET time.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CLOCK ADJUST**
To adjust the date and time, align the cursor with this position and then press the SHUTTER dial. The date and time are set on the CLOCK ADJUST screen. See “Setting the Date and Time” on page 42.

**PAGE BACK**
The TC/UB/CLOCK menu screen returns when the SHUTTER dial is pressed.
### OTHERS[1/2] Menu Screen

The OTHERS menu screen consists of two screens (1/2 screen, 2/2 screen)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>ANALOG OUT CHAR.</strong></td>
<td>Sets whether or not to display characters such as status and menus on the screen for the [Y/P B/PR] and [VIDEO OUT] terminals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ON</td>
<td>On-screen display.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>No on-screen display.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MEMO</strong></td>
<td>When ANALOG OUT CHAR. item is set to ON, the content displayed on the viewfinder is also displayed in the video from the video output terminal. During VTR recording, the mode is displayed in red on the viewfinder. However, color is not applied for the following video outputs:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component output of recording or playback in DV format</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SDI OUT CHAR.</strong></td>
<td>Sets whether or not to display characters such as status and menus on the screen for the [HD/SD SDI] terminal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ON</td>
<td>On-screen display.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>No on-screen display.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LONG PAUSE TIME</strong></td>
<td>Selects the time (minutes) before the tape protect mode (drum head rotation stopped) is engaged when the record-standby condition continues.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIN</td>
<td>3 minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AUTO</strong></td>
<td>5 minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When used in a cold environment or when the stopped or STILL status continues, the setting will be 3 minutes or less regardless of the setting on the menu.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normally, set &quot;MIN&quot; and use this to prevent head clogging and tape damage.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ALARM OR LEVEL</strong></td>
<td>Selects whether or not alarm sound is emitted and the volume of the alarm sound.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>Sound is not output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOW</td>
<td>Alarm sound is soft.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIDDLE</td>
<td>Alarm sound is normal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIGH</td>
<td>Alarm sound is loud.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FRONT TALLY</strong></td>
<td>Selects the lighting method of the FRONT TALLY lamp during recording.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLINK</td>
<td>The lamp blinks from when the REC/VTR trigger is pressed and until recording starts. The lamp lights steadily during recording.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>The lamp is always off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>BACK TALLY</strong></td>
<td>Selects the lighting method of the BACK TALLY lamp during recording.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLINK</td>
<td>The lamp blinks from when the REC/VTR trigger is pressed and until recording starts. The lamp lights steadily during recording.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>The lamp is always off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FORMAT LED</strong></td>
<td>Sets whether or not the [HDV/DV LED] on page 15 lights for HDV format or DV format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ON</td>
<td>Lights.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>Does not light.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>GENLOCK</strong></td>
<td>Launches the [GENLOCK] menu screen. Adjusts the H PHASE or SC PHASE of image signals of this device according to the external synchronization signal input to the [GEN. CK[9] terminal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>NEXT PAGE</strong></td>
<td>To display the OTHERS[2/2] menu screen, move the cursor to this position and press the SHUTTER dial.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAGE BACK</strong></td>
<td>The TOP MENU screen returns when the SHUTTER dial is pressed while the cursor is at this position.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### OTHERS[2/2] Menu Screen

* This is not displayed in VTR mode.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1394 REC TRIGGER</strong></td>
<td>Sets how to control the REC trigger command output from the IEEE1394 connector. (Can be displayed and set in camera mode.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>Does not control the backup device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYNCHRO</td>
<td>Controls the backup device in conjunction with the recording start/stop mode status on this device, and if there is no video cassette or no tape remains for recording, controls the backup device in conjunction with the REC trigger button and the lens VTR button on this device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPLIT</td>
<td>The REC trigger button on the right panel of this device controls the backup device recording start/stop. Set this when you want to control the timing of the recording on this device and the backup device separately.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SERIES</td>
<td>Automatically starts recording on a backup device that is on Pause when the tape on this device has less than 3 minutes remaining during shooting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MEMO</strong></td>
<td>- If you use the backup recording function on the BR-HD50, set this item to OFF.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>* The cursor ▶ does not move to this item when this device is recording.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>BACK SPACE [HDV]</strong></td>
<td>This function controls the camera tape transport, back space and pre-roll time when the camera is connected to an external HDD or external back up Recorder via IEEE1394 in HDV mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P-1394</strong></td>
<td>Priority for IEEE1394 recording (Auto setting)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P-TAPE</strong></td>
<td>Priority for camera VCR recording</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CONNECTED AND POWER ON</strong></td>
<td>IEEE1394 connection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1394 VCR TRIGGER</strong></td>
<td>See page 97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Internal VCR start delay</strong></td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>External Recorder or HDD via IEEE1394 terminal</strong></td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Note:

1. REC start signal will be sent 3 seconds after pressing REC trigger button.
2. Actual recording start time is depending on recorder performance.
3. In this mode, the IEEE1394 stream is discontinuous during internal VCR back space editing when the REC trigger is operated. This may result in breaks in the recording on tape on an external recorder. In the case of HDD recording this may result in this device staying in REC PAUSE or divided files.
4. If HD/SD SDI OUT on the VIDEO FORMAT[2/2] menu screen is set to ON, the internal VCR start delay becomes approximately 3 seconds.
### OTHERS[2/2] Menu Screen (Cont’d)

* This is not displayed in VTR mode.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| DR-HD100 A.OFF | Selects whether or not to turn OFF the DR-HD100 (HDD unit by FOCUS enhancements) when this device is turned OFF.  
**OFF**: Power does not turn OFF.  
**ON**: Power turns OFF with this device.  
**MEMO**  
• The ID mark is displayed at the upper right of the LCD monitor and viewfinder when the DR-HD100 is connected. If this device is turned OFF before the mark is displayed, power does not turn OFF even if this setting is ON.  
• This setting is canceled and the DR-HD100 does not turn OFF in the following instances.  
  - 1394 REC TRIGGER item is set to OFF  
  - VTR mode is set  
• When the DR-HD100 power turns off and this device is turned ON again, after 12 seconds, "DR-HD100 power OFF" appears on the LCD monitor for 7 seconds. |
| MENU ALL RESET | Selects whether to reset the menu screen settings to initial settings.  
The camera mode and VTR mode menu settings are reset. (The TC PRESET, UB PRESET, and CLOCK ADJUST settings are not reset.)  
**CANCEL**: The settings are not reset.  
**EXECUTE**: The settings are reset.  
**MEMO**  
• The cursor (>) does not move to this item when the VTR is activated.  
• If the current menu settings and the factory settings have different FRAME RATE settings, "REBOOT!" is displayed for 3 seconds, this device automatically turns off and then turns on. |
| PAGE BACK | When the cursor is in this position, press the SHUTTER dial once to return to the OTHERS[1/2] menu screen. |
| DRUM HOUR | Displays the drum usage time.  
Use as an estimate for regular maintenance.  
The cursor (>) does not move to this item. |
| FAN HOUR | Displays the fan motor usage time.  
Use as an estimate for regular maintenance.  
The cursor (>) does not move to this item. |

### GENLOCK Menu Screen

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Function/Setting (bold characters indicate initial settings)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| SD/H PHASE | Adjusts the horizontal (H) phase of the SD signal of this device according to the BB (Black Burst) signal input to the [GENLOCK IN] terminal.  
Increase the number : Proceed horizontal phase.  
Decrease the number : Delay horizontal phase.  
**Settings**: MIN, ~1 to ~66, MAX |
| HD H PHASE | Adjusts the horizontal (H) phase of the HD signal and HD/SD SDI signal of this device according to the HD Tri-sync signal input to the [GENLOCK IN] terminal. In addition, during Tri-sync signal input, H PHASE of SD analog signals are simultaneously adjusted in HD H PHASE item.  
Increase the number : Proceed horizontal phase.  
Decrease the number : Delay horizontal phase.  
**Settings**: MIN, ~1023 to ~1, 1 to 1022, MAX  
**MEMO**  
When adjusting the HD H PHASE, the setting value quickly changes while the USER1 or USER2 button is held down for approximately two seconds. |
| SC COARSE | Adjusts the phase of the subcarrier (SC) of the composite or YC separate signal of this device according to the BB (Black Burst) signal input to the [GENLOCK IN] terminal.  
Increase the number : Proceed phase.  
Decrease the number : Delay phase.  
**Settings**: 0°, 90°, 180°, 270° |
| SC FINE | Fine-tunes the phase of the subcarrier (Sc) of the composite or YC separate signal of this device according to the BB (Black Burst) signal input to the [GENLOCK IN] terminal.  
Increase the number : Proceed phase.  
Decrease the number : Delay phase.  
**Settings**: MIN, ~127 to ~1, 1 to 126, MAX |
| PAGE BACK | When the cursor is in this position, press the SHUTTER dial once to return to the OTHERS[1/2] menu screen. |

1) REMOTE appears as the setting value of this item when the remote control unit is connected.
FILE MANAGE Menu Screen

You can perform the following operations in the FILE MANAGE menu screen.
- Settings corresponding to shooting conditions can be read immediately with the following read-only files.
  - LIVE HD60P: Ideal setting for HD60P format
  - LIVE HD50P: Ideal setting for HD50P format
  - CINEMA HD24P: Ideal setting for movie-quality shooting
- The read-only files listed above cannot be saved or reset.
- Save menu settings (Camcorder: CAM1, 2, 3, 4; SD memory card: EXT1, 2, 3, 4) to files.
- Load saved files.
- You can set a SUB NAME for the file to be saved.
- Reset the menu settings to the factory settings.
- Initialize (format) an SD memory card.

To display the FILE MANAGE menu screen:
- Select the FILE MANAGE.. item on the TOP MENU screen.

Loading a menu settings file

Select the LOAD FILE.. item on the FILE MANAGE menu screen.

1. Turn the SHUTTER dial, bring the cursor (►) to SELECT and press the SHUTTER dial.
2. Turn the SHUTTER dial, select the file to save to, and press the SHUTTER dial.
3. Turn the SHUTTER dial, bring the cursor (►) to LOAD and press the SHUTTER dial.
4. With EXECUTE selected, press the SHUTTER dial to read the menu settings in the selected file.
5. Turn the SHUTTER dial, bring the cursor (►) to STORE and press the SHUTTER dial.
   - The file name setting area flashes.
6. With EXECUTE selected, turn the SHUTTER dial to save the menu settings to the selected file.

Error displays
- NO CARD: No SD memory card is inserted. Insert an SD memory card.
- NO FORMAT: The SD memory card is not initialized (formatted). Initialize (format) the SD memory card.
- NO ACCESS: There is a problem with the SD memory card. Replace the SD memory card.
- WRITE PROTECT: The SD memory card may be write-protected. Check that write-protection is disabled.
- DISK FULL: The SD memory card does not have enough free space. Delete unwanted data or initialize (format) the card.
- INVALID VIDEO FORMAT: A settings file for a video format that is not supported was called up.
  - Settings files for video formats that are not supported cannot be called up.
- READ ONLY FILE: Indicates a read-only file. Read-only files cannot be saved.

Saving settings

Select the STORE FILE.. item on the FILE MANAGE menu screen.
1. Turn the SHUTTER dial, bring the cursor (►) to SELECT and press the SHUTTER dial.
   - The file name setting area flashes.
2. Turn the SHUTTER dial, select the file to save to, and press the SHUTTER dial.
3. Turn the SHUTTER dial, bring the cursor (►) to SUB NAME and press the SHUTTER dial.
   - The first character in the file name flashes.
4. Turn the SHUTTER dial, select the character, and press the SHUTTER dial.
   - The second character in the file name flashes.
   - Repeat Step 4, up through the eighth character.
5. Turn the SHUTTER dial, bring the cursor (►) to STORE and press the SHUTTER dial.
   - EXECUTE (if the file already exists, "OVERWRITE") flashes.
6. With EXECUTE selected, turn the SHUTTER dial to save the menu settings to the selected file.

CAUTION
This device cannot load scene files from GY-HD100/GY-HD110-series devices.
Reseting the menu settings to the factory settings

Select the RESET FILE... item on the FILE MANAGE menu screen.

1. Turn the SHUTTER dial, bring the cursor (K) to SELECT and press the SHUTTER dial.
   - The file name setting area for the file to be reset flashes.
2. Turn the SHUTTER dial, select the name of the file to reset, and press the SHUTTER dial.
   - CANCEL flashes.
3. Turn the SHUTTER dial, bring the cursor (K) to the RESET item and press the SHUTTER dial.
   - EXECUTE flashes.
4. With EXECUTE selected, press the SHUTTER dial to reset the settings.

If the current menu settings and the factory settings have different video format settings, “REBOOT!” is displayed for 3 seconds, this device turns off automatically and then turns on.

When this happens, the SUB NAME initial value, “[SCENE]” is displayed.

FILE MANAGE Menu Screen

(Cont’d)

MEMO

Even if CAM1, CAM2, CAM3, or CAM4 are reset, the current settings are not reset.
To reset the currently set values, select “CURRENT”.

Initializing (formatting) an SD memory card

Before initializing (formatting) a card:
1. Insert and remove the SD memory card with the power to this device OFF.
2. Disable write-protection on the SD memory card.
3. Check that an SD memory card has been inserted into this device.
4. Turn the SHUTTER dial, bring the cursor (K) to the FOR-MAT SD CARD item and press the SHUTTER dial.
   - CANCEL flashes.
5. Turn the SHUTTER dial, and when EXECUTE flashes, press the SHUTTER dial to initialize (format) the card.

If there is an error:
Check items 2 and 3 in “Before initializing (formatting) a card”.

FEATURES OF THE CAMERA SECTION

How to Use Skin Detail

This function suppresses edge sharpening in the skin color areas of the video signal, enabling velvety, smooth skin tones.

Setting the skin detail function color and range

1. Display the ADVANCED PROCESS menu screen.
   In menu setting procedure:

2. Turn the SHUTTER dial, bring the cursor (K) to the SKIN COLOR DET. item and press the SHUTTER dial.
   - The setting area flashes and can be changed.
3. Turn the SHUTTER dial up or down to widen or narrow the color range.
4. To confirm the range, press the SHUTTER dial.

5. If you want to change the range of colors recognized with the skin color detection function, follow the steps below:
   - Turn the SHUTTER dial, bring the cursor (K) to the SKIN COLOR RANGE item and press the SHUTTER dial.
   - The setting area flashes and can be changed.

6. To stop the skin color detection function, turn the SHUTTER dial, bring the cursor (K) to the PAGE BACK item and press the SHUTTER dial.
How to Use Skin Detail
(Cont’d)

Using the Skin Detail Function
To use the skin detail function set on the SKIN COLOR ADJUST screen, select “ON” for the SKIN DETECT item on the CAMERA PROCESS[1/2] menu screen. In addition, you can use the LEVEL item to set three levels of suppression of skin color area detail enhancement in the video signal. See page 81.

While the skin detail function operates, the “SD” indicator is displayed on the STATUS 0 and STATUS 1 screen in the viewfinder or LCD monitor.

Confirming the color tone area adjusted with the Skin Detail function
When you push the ZEBRA switch on the front panel to “SKIN AREA”, the skin detail function turns ON, and the color area adjusted with the skin detail function is displayed in color in the LCD monitor or viewfinder.

MEMO
- When the REVERSE PICTURE item in the CAMERA PROCESS[2/2] menu screen is set to ROTATE, skin detail function is available but the detection area is not displayed in the viewfinder or LCD screen.
- When COLOR GAIN item on the ADVANCED PROCESS menu screen is set to “OFF”, only the portion the skin detail function is working is displayed in skin color. See page 83.

Outputting Color Bars

GY-HD250/GY-HD251 can output three types of color bars, depending on the camera settings:
- NTSC standard: Outputs color bars compliant with the SMPTE standard.
- PAL standard: Outputs color bars compliant with the EBU standard.
- 16:9 screen: Outputs multi-format color bars.

To output color bars, make the following settings.
1. Turn the FULL AUTO switch to “OFF”.
2. Set the BARS item on the CAMERA OPERATION menu screen to “ON”. See page 80.
   - Color bars are output.

MEMO
- You can select whether to output an audio test signal during color bar output using the TEST TONE item on the AUDIO/MIC[1/2] menu screen. See page 87.
- Color bars are not output when FULL AUTO mode is ON or in VTR mode.
Warnings and Responses

Warnings are displayed on the LCD monitor or the viewfinder if there was a mistaken operation, if the battery or tape is low, or if there is a problem on the VTR.

In addition, if the tape or battery is low or if the VTR has a problem, the tally lamp flashes (or lights) and an alarm is output from the monitor speaker or PHONES jack.

MEMO

GY-HD250/GY-HD251 uses microcomputers. It may not operate properly if there is external static or interference. If this happens, turn the power off and then on again.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Display</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>50/25 INHIBIT CHANGE FRAME RATE MENU</td>
<td>The FRAME RATE item is set to 50/25, and a tape recorded in 60/30 frame is played back or it is input into the IEEE1394 port in VTR mode.</td>
<td>Displays the FRAME RATE item on the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen to match the frames. See page 77.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60/30 INHIBIT CHANGE FRAME RATE MENU</td>
<td>The FRAME RATE item is set to 60/30, and a tape recorded in 50/25 frame or it is input into the IEEE1394 port in VTR mode.</td>
<td>Displays the FRAME RATE item as shown below to input external images. U model : 60/30 E model : 50/25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUX IN INHIBIT CHANGE FRAME RATE MENU</td>
<td>Displays when the FRAME RATE item is set to 50/25 or 24, and the GENLOCK/AUX IN switch is set to AUX IN.</td>
<td>If it is not possible to enter recording mode while &quot;SYNC LOCKING&quot; is displayed. Wait until the indication disappears.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYNC LOCKING</td>
<td>Camera image is locking to external synchronization signals.</td>
<td>It is not possible to enter recording mode while &quot;SYNC LOCKING&quot; is displayed. Wait until the indication disappears.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INVALID SYNC</td>
<td>Displays when the FRAME RATE item is set to 60/30 or 24 and signals not supported by GENLOCK are input.</td>
<td>Input supported external synchronization signals. See page 68.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DV-50I INVALID!</td>
<td>A tape recorded in DV-50I, DV-24P, or DV-24PA format was played back or input into the IEEE1394 connector in VTR mode on the U model.</td>
<td>The IEEE1394 connector cannot play back tapes recorded in DV-50I, DV-24P or DV-24PA format or input into the IEEE1394 connector in VTR mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DV-24P INVALID!</td>
<td>A tape recorded in DV-50I or DV-24P format was played back or input into the IEEE1394 connector in VTR mode on the U model.</td>
<td>The IEEE1394 connector cannot play back tapes recorded in DV-50I or DV-24P format or input into the IEEE1394 connector in VTR mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DV-50I INVALID!</td>
<td>A tape recorded in DV-50I or DV-24P format was played back or input into the IEEE1394 connector in VTR mode on the U model.</td>
<td>The IEEE1394 connector cannot play back tapes recorded in DV-50I or DV-24P format or input into the IEEE1394 connector in VTR mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDV-SD60P INVALID!</td>
<td>A tape recorded in HDV-SD60P format was played back or input into the IEEE1394 connector in VTR mode.</td>
<td>GY-HD250/GY-HD251 cannot play back or input an HDV-SD60P/HDV-SD50P signal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDV-SD50P INVALID!</td>
<td>A tape recorded in HDV-SD50P format was played back or input into the IEEE1394 connector in VTR mode.</td>
<td>GY-HD250/GY-HD251 cannot play back or input an HDV-SD60P/HDV-SD50P signal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INVALID TAPE!</td>
<td>A computer data tape or a DVC PRO cassette was used.</td>
<td>Use a MiniDV videocassette.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LP TAPE INVALID*</td>
<td>Tried to play back a tape recorded in LP mode.</td>
<td>GY-HD250/GY-HD251 cannot record or play back in LP mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NO DV SIGNAL*</td>
<td>DV signal was not input.</td>
<td>Set the IEEE1394 switch to DV and input a DV signal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NO HDV SIGNAL*</td>
<td>HDV signal was not input.</td>
<td>Set the IEEE1394 switch to HDV and input an HDV signal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COPY INHIBIT*</td>
<td>Tried to record a copyguarded signal.</td>
<td>Cannot record a copyguarded signal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REC INHIBIT*</td>
<td>A tape that cannot be recorded (black switch is set to SAVE) was inserted.</td>
<td>Set the switch on the back of the cassette tape to REC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NO TAPE*</td>
<td>No videocassette tape is inserted.</td>
<td>Insert a cassette tape.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* When status indications are magnified, warnings are not displayed on the LCD monitor. See “Magnified Status Indications on the LCD Monitor” on page 29.

Display Status Action

- CHANGE PB TAPE FORMAT* Image format which is different from the one set in the PB TAPE item on the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen is being played back.
- LOW VOLTAGE* Battery is low. Change the battery pack or replace it.
- TAPE NEAR END* There are less than 3 minutes remaining on the tape (flashes only when recording).
- TAPE END* Displayed when the tape ends. Replace the tape.
- CHANGE 1394 SWITCH* Recording or playback video format and the IEEE1394 setting is different when connected to the IEEE1394 port.
- SWITCH TO VTR MODE* Tried to use the FF orREW button in camera mode.
- HEAD CLEANING REQUIRED Displayed when the head is dirty. (Head clogging was detected during an edit search in shooting mode as well as during playback and displayed.) Clean with a special head cleaning tape, see page 7.
- CLEANING TAPE! Displayed when a head cleaning tape is inserted. The display disappears when the head cleaning tape is removed.
- COPY GUARD!* Tried to play back a copyguarded tape. Cannot play back a copyguarded tape.
- FAN MOTOR HOUR Over the prescribed fan motor usage time. Please contact your local dealer or JVC.
- PUSH CASSETTE COVER* The videocassette cover is not firmly shut. Lightly push the top center of the videocassette cover.
- CHANGE THE SYS- TEM* Displayed when you attempt to change FRAME RATE item in the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen. When the FRAME RATE item setting is changed, the frame rate system for this device is changed. Check the frame rate to use before changing the setting. See pages 54 and 77.
- 50/25 INHIBIT CHANGE FRAME RATE MENU Sets the FRAME RATE item on the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen to match the frames.
- CHANGE PB TAPE Item setting for the PB TAPE item is being played back.

Specify the PB TAPE item on the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen to match the frames.

See page 79.

* When status indications are magnified, warnings are not displayed on the LCD monitor.
### Warnings and Responses (Cont’d)

**Warning Indications for VTR Abnormalities**

Should malfunctions occur during VTR operation, this device self-diagnoses the cause and shows the diagnose together with an error code on the LCD monitor or in the viewfinder.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Code</th>
<th>Error Details</th>
<th>GY-HD250/GY-HD251 Operation</th>
<th>Remedy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0201</td>
<td>CONDENSATION ON DRUM</td>
<td>Indicates dew formation (condensation). Operations are rejected.</td>
<td>Leave this device with the power ON until the indication disappears. Switch the power OFF and then switch it back ON. However, the tape may be damaged depending on the circumstances. Please consult the person in charge of professional video equipment at your nearest JVC-authorized service agent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3200</td>
<td>LOADING FAILURE</td>
<td>Tape cannot be loaded.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3300</td>
<td>UNLOADING FAILURE</td>
<td>Tape cannot be unloaded.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4305</td>
<td>CASSETTE EJECT FAILURE</td>
<td>Irregularity with eject operation.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5605 - 5609</td>
<td>DEFECTIVE TAPE</td>
<td>Tape is out. Operation stops.</td>
<td>Press the EJECT button to take out the cassette. If the tape runs out during recording, switch the power OFF and then switch it back ON, press the EJECT button, and then take out the cassette.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5702</td>
<td>TAPE END DET ERROR</td>
<td>Tape end sensor error. Operations are rejected.</td>
<td>Switch the power OFF and then switch it back ON. However, the tape may be damaged depending on the circumstances. Please consult the person in charge of professional video equipment at your nearest JVC-authorized service agent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7001</td>
<td>TAPE BEGIN DET ERROR</td>
<td>Tape beginning sensor error.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7101</td>
<td>DRUM MOTOR FAILURE</td>
<td>Drum rotation error.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7201 - 7203</td>
<td>SYSTEM REEL FAILURE</td>
<td>System rotation error.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7201 - 7203</td>
<td>TAKE UP REEL FAILURE</td>
<td>Take up reel rotation error.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7305</td>
<td>TAKE UP REEL FAILURE</td>
<td>Take up reel rotation error while unloading.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8000</td>
<td>EMERGENCY TAPE!</td>
<td>Tape problem detected.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TURN POWER OFF Turn back on later.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Alarm Sound**

- **Remaining battery power becomes low**, a warning sound is output from the monitoring loudspeaker and the PHONES jack. (In Camera mode only)

When an irregularity occurs in the VTR, a warning sound is also output.

Whether or not alarm sound should be output and the volume level are selected with the ALARM VR LEVEL item on the OTHERS[1/2] menu screen.

- **Depending on the alarm conditions**, the warning indicators on the LCD monitor/viewfinder screen, the TALLY lamp, and alarm sounds appear as shown in the following table.

#### Alarm Indications on LCD Monitor/Viewfinder Screen

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Display Symbols</th>
<th>Alarm Sound</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Drum Motor Failure</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Drum Motor Failure" /></td>
<td>Dew formation (condensation) or error has occurred in the VTR.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tape Near End</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Tape Near End" /></td>
<td>About 3 min. before tape end (displayed during recording).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tape End</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Tape End" /></td>
<td>Tape end (displayed during recording).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low Voltage</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Low Voltage" /></td>
<td>Remaining battery power is low.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Display symbols:
- ![Blinking once per second](image)
- ![Blinking four times per second](image)
- ![Sound interrupted once per second](image)
- ![Continuous sound](image)
### Troubleshooting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symptoms</th>
<th>Remedy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Power cannot be switched ON. | - Is power supply connected correctly?  
- Is battery pack recharged?  
- Was the power turned ON immediately after being turned OFF?  
Wait at least 5 seconds before turning the power ON again once it has been turned OFF. |
| Recording is not possible. | - Is the REC LOCK switch on the handle set to ON?  
- Is the switch on cassette set to “SAVE” or “REC” mode?  
- The Camera mode has not been selected. (The VTR indicator does not light.)  
- While the VTR indicator lights, press the MODE switch upward to turn on the CAM indicator. |
| Camera image does not appear on LCD monitor or in viewfinder. | - The Camera mode has not been selected. (The VTR indicator does not light.)  
- While the VTR indicator lights, camera image will not be output.  
Press the CAM/VTR switch upward to turn on the VTR indicator. |
| Image shown on LCD monitor or in viewfinder is dark or blurred. | - Adjust the brightness of the LCD monitor or viewfinder screen.  
- Is the ND filter knob set to 2?  
- Is the iris closed?  
- Is the shutter speed too fast?  
- Is the viewfinder cable correctly connected? |
| Playback does not start when the play button is pressed. | - In the Camera mode, if “STOP” is indicated as the VTR operation mode indicator.  
When “STBY” is indicated, press the STOP button to display “STOP”. |
| Cannot play back. | - Is the PB TAPE item on the VIDEO FORMAT menu screen set to a setting other than AUTO?  
If this menu item and the tape format do not match, the tape cannot be played back. |
| Cannot input an HDV/DV signal. | - Is the IEEE1394 switch set correctly? |
| Noise interferes with playback video. | - Video head may be clogged with dirt.  
Clean head with the special head cleaning tape.  
See “Precautions for Use of Head Cleaning Tape” on page 7. |
| Sound is not output during playback. | - Is the AUDIO SELECT item on the AUDIO menu screen set to CH#4?  
To output the sound of the recording, set to CH1/2. |
| Noise appears when playing back a tape recorded on another unit. | - When a tape recorded on another unit is played back or used for recording, this phenomenon may occur due to tracking errors.  
- The transient section between scenes recorded on other units and those recorded on the GY-HD250/GY-HD251 may appear disturbed. |
| The front section’s audio level control doesn’t work. | - The CH1/CH2 AUDIO SELECT switch set to “AUTO”?  
- Is the FULL AUTO switch set to “ON”? |
| Cannot initialize (format) the SD memory card. | - Is the SD memory card write-protected?  
See “Setting and Displaying the Date and Time” on pages 41, 42. |
| Battery alarm is displayed even if a fully charged battery pack is put in. | - The battery pack old? |
| Cassette cannot be ejected after the power is turned ON. | - The capacity of the power supply may be insufficient.  
Check the power voltage. |
| Time code or user’s bits data not displayed. | - Is the PB item on the LCD/VF[4] menu screen set to OFF?  
If so, set to ON. |
| The date and time are not displayed or recorded. | - Is the DISPLAY item on the TIME/DATE menu screen set to OFF?  
Set to ON when the data should be displayed and recorded.  
- Is the date and time setting made?  
- See “Setting and Displaying the Date and Time” on pages 41, 42. |
| Viewfinder is not displayed properly. | - Is VF SIGNAL on the LCD/VF[4] menu screen set to a setting other than RGB? |

### How to Display the Hour Meter

The drum and fan motor usage times are displayed in the DRUM HOUR item and the FAN HOUR items on the OTHERS[2/2] menu screen as the hour meters on GY-HD250/GY-HD251.

1. Turn the POWER switch ON.
2. Press the STATUS button for at least 1 second to display the TOP MENU screen.
3. Turn the SHUTTER dial, select the OTHERS. item, and press the SHUTTER dial.
4. Select the NEXT PAGE item on the OTHERS[1/2] menu screen and press the SHUTTER dial.
5. To return to the normal screen display, do one of the following:  
   - Press the STATUS button.  
   - Return to the TOP MENU screen, select the EXIT item on the TOP MENU screen and press the SHUTTER dial.
Specifications

[General]
- Power requirements: DC 12 V, 2 A
- Power consumption: Approx. 24 W (in the Record mode)
- Dimensions: 224(W) × 242.3(H) × 401(D) mm (U model), 224(W) × 242.3(H) × 414(D) mm (E model)
- Mass: 3.6 kg (8 lbs.) (U model), 3.8 kg (8.4 lbs.) (E model) (including lens, viewfinder, microphone and tape)
- Temperature: Operating: 0°C to 40°C (32°F to 104°F), Storage: –20°C to 60°C (–4°F to 140°F)
- Humidity: Operating: 30% to 80% RH, Storage: 85% RH or less

[Camera section]
- Image pickup device: 1/3" interline-transfer CCDs
- Color separation optical system: F1.4, 3-color separation prism
- Number of total pixels: Approx. 1,110,000 pixels
- Color bars: SMPTE/EBU type Sync system: Internal sync (built-in SSG)
- Lens mount: 1/3" bayonet system
- ND filter: 14ND, 1/16ND
- Gain: 0, 3, 6, 9, 12, 15, 18 dB, ALC
- Electronic shutter: Standard value: 59.94 Hz (U model)/50 Hz (E model), Fixed values: 7.5 - 10,000 Hz, 11 steps (HDV HD30p/DV 24p), 6.25 - 10,000 Hz, 11 steps (HDV HD25p/DV 25p), 5 - 10,000 Hz, 12 steps (HDV HD24p/DV 24p), 25.04 - 10,489.5 Hz (HDV HD30p/DV 24p/DV 24p), 24.01 - 10,489.5 Hz (HDV HD24p/DV 24p)
- Dynamic range: 300% or more

[Video section]
- Video signal recording format: DV format, 8-bit, 25 Mbps
- Compression: DV compression, 4:1:1 (NTSC)/4:2:0 (PAL)
- Audio:
  - [HDV] Audio signal recording format: MPEG1 Audio Layer II
  - [DV] Audio signal recording format: 16-bit (locked audio), 48 kHz PCM for 2 channels or 12-bit, 32 kHz PCM for 4 channels
- Usable tape: MinDV tape
- Tape speed: 18.8 mm/sec.
- Record/play time: 83 minutes (with an M-DV63PROHD tape)

[Time Code]
- Time code signal: Compliance with SMPTE/EBU standard
- LTC input: 0 dbse6 dBs, high impedance, unbalanced
- LTC output: 0 dbse6 dBs, low impedance, unbalanced

[Connectors]
- AUX input: Composite video signals 1V (p-p) ±0.3V (p-p), 75Ω unbalanced (BNC)
- Genlock input: BB signals
  - SMPTE 170M (RS-170A) compliant
  - NTSC/ITU-R BT. 470-6 compliant PAL
  - HDTV Tri-sync signals [SMPTE 296M/SMPTE 274M compliant] (BNC)
- Analog composite output: 1.0 V (p-p), 75Ω unbalanced (RCA)
- Analog component output: Y: 1.0 V (p-p), 75Ω unbalanced (BNC)
  - Pb/Pb: 0.7 V (p-p), 75Ω unbalanced (BNC)
  - Pr/Pr: 0.7 V (p-p), 75Ω unbalanced (BNC)
- HD/SD SDI output
  - SMPTE 292M compliant HD serial digital signals
  - SMPTE 259M compliant SD serial digital signals
- Audio inputs
  - Mic: –60 dBs, 3 kΩ, balanced (XLR), +48 V output for phantom power supply
  - Line: +4 dBs, 10 kΩ, balanced (XLR)
  - Audio outputs: –8 dBs, low impedance, unbalanced (RCA +2)
- Earphone jack: –17 dBs to –60 dBs, 8-Ω impedance (stereo mini-jack +2)
- IEEE1394 connector: 6-pin

[DV]
- Video signal recording format: DV format, 8-bit, 25 Mbps
- Compression: DV compression, 4:1:1 (NTSC)/4:2:0 (PAL)

[ACCESSORIES]
- Lens: 1 (Excluding the CHU/CHE model)
- Microphone: 1
- Clamp Filter: 1
- SD memory card: 1
- Tripod base: 1 (U model only)
- Instruction Manual: 1
- Warranty Card: 1

For details, consult your JVC dealer.

EXTERNAL DIMENSIONS (unit: mm)

* Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.
About provided clamp filter

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wrong</th>
<th>Correct</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Page 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clamp Filters x 4</td>
<td>Clamp Filters x 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For DC (x2)/Audio/IEEE1394 Cable</td>
<td>For DC (x2)/Earphone/IEEE1394 Cable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See pages 36,64 and 67</td>
<td>See pages 36,64 and 67</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Connecting the Earphone Cable

To reduce the emission of unwanted radio waves, be sure to attach the provided clamp filter as shown in the figure below.

- Attach the clamp filter as close to this device as possible, as shown in the figure.